LATIN PROSE WRITING

MATHER AND WHEELER

ia

BRARY
VERSITY OF
ALIFORNIA
AN DIEGO

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/connectedpassage00mathiala

Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

Essentials of Latin for Beginners. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.

A School Latin Grammar. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. $1.00.

A First Latin Writer. M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.

Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. $1.00.

Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. $1.25.

Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University. $1.25.

Six Orations. $1.00.

Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.

Cicero. Cato Maior. Frank G. Moore, Columbia University. 80 cents.

Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia. Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.

Selections from Livy. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. $1.50.

Horace. Odes and Epodes. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. $1.50.

Horace. Satires. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. $1.00.

Horace. Satires and Epistles. Edward P Morris, Yale University. $1.25.

Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare, Moore. **Satires and Epistles,** Morris. In one volume. $2.00.

Pliny's Letters. Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.

Tibullus. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.

Lucretius. William A. Merrill, University of California. $2.25.

Latin Literature of the Empire. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.

Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius $1.80
Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus $1.80

Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. $1.25.

Others to be announced later.

CONNECTED PASSAGES

FOR

LATIN PROSE WRITING

WITH

FULL INTRODUCTORY NOTES ON IDIOM

BY

MAURICE W. MATHER, PH.D.
FORMERLY INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

AND

ARTHUR L. WHEELER, PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

NEW YORK .:. CINCINNATI .:. CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Copyright, 1899, by HARPER & BROTHERS.

All rights reserved.

W. P. 8

PREFACE

In planning the present book it has been the aim of the authors to present within two covers all the essential apparatus for the writing of average passages in Latin prose. By including in the Notes on Idiom the requisite body of syntax, stated from the point of view of the student who is to write Latin, they have dispensed with the ordinary system of reference to three or four Latin grammars. They believe that in this way not only much time will be saved, but that the added convenience will produce more accurate results, since both student and teacher may refer instantly to the statement of any of the ordinary principles involved. The addition of the Latin text tends to the same end, and it is hoped that for the exercises contained in this volume the student will rarely find it necessary to refer to anything not included in the volume itself.

The book is not intended to teach how to write isolated sentences illustrative of given constructions, but it assumes that the pupil, after a year or more of such practice (the time varying in different schools), is ready to learn the art of writing connected narrative in Latin. Recognizing that, in order to attain perfection in writing any language, good models must be studied, the authors have based their exercises on Caesar, Nepos, and Cicero, such selections from these writers being taken as are usually read in schools. About a page of Latin text serves as a model for each exercise.

As the book is not for beginners, the individual exercises have not been made vehicles for teaching any one or two constructions, such as the ablative absolute, purpose, etc.; but the authors have felt at liberty to introduce at any time even the more difficult con-

structions. Indirect discourse, for instance, is taken up at the very beginning. But this will not be found to occasion too much difficulty, for constant reference is made to the notes on Latin idiom (pp. 1–69), where the construction needed is briefly explained from the point of view of a writer, not a reader or translator, of Latin. At the same time, the principle of gradation has been followed to some extent, especially in the exercises based on the third book of the *Gallic War*, the *Alcibiades*, and the *Manilian Law*. While, in general, the vocabulary and the constructions for any exercise will be supplied in the Latin text on which the given exercise is based, yet enough variation from the language of the model is required to give the pupil abundant practice in handling forms and constructions. Where the vocabulary of the model is not sufficient, occasionally the Latin word is given in a footnote; more frequently, however, a synonym or hint is given in English, or, when possible, the pupil is referred to a preceding section in the Latin text where the word is found or at least suggested. By this means the pupil's power of observation is increased, his interest is quickened by the pleasure of discovery, and he will remember the word much better than if he found it ready at hand in a dictionary. It will be seen, therefore, that for work of this grade an English-Latin dictionary is quite unnecessary. Indeed, the use of such a book would mean the loss of no inconsiderable part of the training which is supplied by the study of Latin writing.

In the Notes on Idiom no constructions have been explained except such as are common in prose. The illustrative examples are almost all, with the exception of the very simplest, taken from the authors who serve as models for the exercises. It did not seem worth while to cite the references, as doubtless the larger number of the examples will be familiar to most teachers.

A number of recent examination papers from various colleges have been inserted, in the belief that they will be found useful for sight tests and occasional examinations. The notes accompanying some of the papers belong to the original examinations. For the text of the Latin models the small Teubner series has been followed. The punctuation has been changed, however, to conform

to the custom in English, and one *i* has been written in the genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*.

In conclusion, the authors wish to express their hearty thanks to the teachers who have kindly furnished them with the examination papers used in the book. Especial gratitude is due the editors of this series, Professors Morris and Morgan, whose many kind criticisms and helpful suggestions have been invaluable. The authors will be glad to receive from teachers who use the book any corrections or suggestions whereby its usefulness may be increased.

M. W. M.
A. L. W.

Cambridge and New Haven, March, 1899

SUGGESTIONS FOR THE USE OF THE BOOK

BEFORE attempting to write out an exercise the pupil should read carefully, aloud if possible, the Latin text which serves as a model for the exercise. Noting in every sentence the way the Latin writer states his thought, let him consider how in English the same idea would be expressed idiomatically and naturally. The use of so-called "translation English" is to be avoided. The teacher may point out, in assigning each lesson, certain sentences in the Latin model in which the Latin and the English idioms are peculiarly unlike.[1] The ablative absolute, for instance, can only rarely be translated literally (see the examples in §§ 125 f. of the Notes on Idiom). Frequently a relative pronoun is employed in Latin where a demonstrative or a personal pronoun is demanded in English (see § 288). Again, two or three English sentences may become a single sentence in Latin (see § 296), etc. When a thorough familiarity has thus been acquired with the given passage of Latin, the pupil should drop the model entirely for the time being, and read over the English exercise from beginning to end. Then before he writes a single word, let him rapidly translate the exercise mentally and without any assistance, even from the footnotes. If a word or a phrase cannot be recalled, it may be disregarded for the moment. After running through the exercise in this way, the pupil may get such help as he can from the notes, the Latin text, or a Latin-English (*not* English-Latin) dictionary.

[1] Sometimes a chapter of the Latin text will be found to epitomize very well a group of constructions,—e. g., *Alcibiades* 4 illustrates several different constructions of place. Attention is occasionally called to this in the notes to the exercises (see Exercise 35), and the teacher is advised to do all he can in this direction. By use of the indexes the teacher can easily supplement the grammatical references of any lesson.

At last, when he has gained all the information possible about the exercise, he is ready to write out his Latin version. He should never forget that he is to produce one continuous piece of Latin, not merely disconnected sentences. Let him observe with great care, therefore, the ways in which his Latin model begins each new sentence so as to make the thought follow on naturally and easily from the preceding sentence. Let him also remember that the important word of each phrase, clause, or sentence, should stand at, or near, the beginning; and that, furthermore, the sentence should be so arranged that, when read aloud, it presents a pleasing succession of sounds to the ear. At the same time, due attention should be given to the periodic structure of sentences, an arrangement much more characteristic of Latin than of English. Especial emphasis is to be laid on the mastery of §§ **284–297**, in which the arrangement of the Latin sentence is treated.

PART I

NOTES ON IDIOM

1. Adjectives

1. AGREEMENT. An attributive adjective belonging to two or more nouns regularly agrees with the nearest. **Non eadem alacritate et studio,** *not with the same energy and zeal.*

2. A predicate adjective is regularly *plural* if it modifies two or more singular subjects, and *masculine* if the subjects are living beings of different genders; *neuter* if the subjects are things. **Pater sororque occisi sunt,** *father and sister were killed.* **Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant,** *wrath and greed were more powerful than authority.*

NOTE.—If the nouns represent both things and living beings, there is no fixed usage.

Predicate adjectives often agree with the natural gender of the subject. **Hominum millia sex perterriti,** *six thousand men badly frightened.*

3. ADJECTIVES AS SUBSTANTIVES. To denote a class, adjectives may be used in the masculine plural: **omnes,** *all men, everybody;* **maiores,** *ancestors;* **minores,** *descendants;* **divites,** *the rich;* **pauperes,** *the poor;* **boni,** *the good;* **docti,** *the learned,* etc. In the singular a substantive is usually expressed: **docti,** *the learned,* but **vir doctus,** *the learned man.*

4. The use of neuter plural adjectives as substantives is common only in the nominative and accusative. In the other cases the form is ambiguous—i. e., **omnibus** may be masculine, feminine, or neuter. In such cases it is better to use the proper form of **res**: **omnium rerum,** not **omnium,** as genitive of **omnia**. These neuter plurals often represent English abstract singulars: **vera,** *truth;* **falsa,** *falsehood,* etc.

5. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES. Such phrases as *too severe*, *rather too talkative*, etc., may be rendered by the simple comparative: **gravior, loquacior,** etc.

6. If two qualities belonging to the same object are compared, Latin generally expresses both by the comparative. **Fortior est quam prudentior,** *he is more brave than prudent.*

7. The most common way of strengthening the comparative is by **multo.** With the superlative, **longe** is a common word. **Multo nobilior,** *much nobler*, but **longe nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix,** *Orgetorix was by far the noblest.*

8. Phrases like *as great as possible*, *as many as possible*, etc., are rendered by **quam** (with or without a form of **possum**) and a superlative. **Quam plurimi,** *as many as possible.* **Quam maxime** or **quam maxime potest,** *as greatly as possible.*

9. The English *very* is rendered by the simple superlative or the superlative with **vel. Virtus summa,** or **vel summa,** *very great valor.*

10. Some Latin adjectives are used in direct agreement with a noun to denote part of an object, where the English employs a noun with *of*. **Summus mons,** *the top of the mountain.* **Per mediam urbem,** *through the midst of the city.* So **multus,** *much* (*of*); **extremus,** *end* (*of*); **nullus,** *none* (*of*); **totus, imus, infimus, intimus, postremus, ultimus, reliquus, primus.**

2. Pronouns

11. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. These are not expressed except for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity. **Lego, legimus,** *I read, we read*, but **ego tibi ignoscam?** *am I to pardon you?*

12. The genitive forms **mei, tui, sui,** (plural) **vestri, nostri,** are chiefly used as objective genitives. **Habetis ducem memorem vestri,** *you have a leader mindful of you.* But the genitive plural forms in **-um** (**nostrum** and **vestrum**) are generally used as partitive genitives. **Designat oculis ad caedem unum quemque nostrum,** *he marks each one of us for slaughter.*

13. The genitive of pronouns of the first and second persons does not express possession (12). For this purpose possessives are used. **Amor mei,** *love for me* (objective), but **meus amor,** *my love* (for some one else).

NOTE.—Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person except **se** (used only as a reflexive). Where necessary, this want is supplied by a demonstrative or relative pronoun (22).

14. Where several persons are represented by pronouns in Latin the pronoun of the first person stands first, reversing the English order. **Ego et tu et tuus frater,** *you, your brother, and I.*

15. DEMONSTRATIVES. **Hic,** *this*, refers to what is near the speaker, and is called the demonstrative of the first person. It often refers to the present as contrasted with the past. **Haec tempora,** *modern times, the present times.* **Ad hanc aetatem,** *to the present time.*

Closely allied is the use of **ille . . . hic,** *the former* (more distant) . . . *the latter* (nearer). **Curio dicebat hos turpissimae fugae rationem habere, illos etiam iniquo loco dimicandum putare,** *Curio said that the latter* (**hos**) *were planning a most disgraceful flight, the former* (**illos**) *thought they ought to give battle even in an unfavorable position.*

16. **Hic** often refers to what follows, *the following.* **Eius belli haec fuit causa,** *the cause of the war was as follows.*

Hic may also refer to what precedes, *the above, the preceding.* **Huic legioni Caesar indulserat praecipue,** *Caesar had favored this* (the before-mentioned) *legion especially.*

17. **Iste,** *that* (of yours), generally refers to that which concerns the second person, and is called the demonstrative of the second person. **Extra istam coniurationem,** *outside that conspiracy of yours.*

18. **Iste** often has a contemptuous or sneering tone. **Iste Manlius,** *that* (*fellow*) *Manlius of yours.* This tone is apt to remain where **iste** refers to the third person. **Istae copiae,** *those forces of his.* Compare the English "such."

19. **Ille,** *that,* represents what is at a distance from the speaker. It is called the demonstrative of the third person, *that of his, hers, theirs.* **Dux mei reditus, illius hostis,** *a leader in effecting my return, an enemy of that man.*

20. **Ille** often refers to that which is well known or has been mentioned. **Ille Romulus,** *the well-known Romulus.* **Aquila illa argentea,** *that notorious silver eagle.*

21. The corresponding adverbs **hic, illic, istic, huc, illinc,** etc., often maintain the same personal relations. **Huc,** *to this place* (where *I* am). **Illinc,** *from that place* (where *he* is). **Istic,** *there* (where *you* are), etc.

22. **Is,** *that,* not so strong as **hic** or **ille,** is used as a pronoun of the third person where one needs to be expressed (13 N.) and as an antecedent of the relative **qui: is qui,** *he who,* etc.

23. **Is** has often the force of **talis,** *such.* **Est enim nobis is animus, Quirites, ut,** etc., *we have such spirit that,* etc. This use is frequent when a relative or **ut** follows.

24. "*That of*" is not to be expressed by **is** and a genitive, but by a genitive alone or by repeating the noun to which "*that*" refers. **Considius, qui et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat,** *Considius, who had been in the army of Lucius Sulla and later in that of* (not **in eo**) *Marcus Crassus.*

25. REFLEXIVES. The reflexives of the first and second persons are the ordinary personal pronouns. **Me consolor,** *I comfort myself.* **Vobis persuadetis,** *you convince yourselves.* But for the third person **is** (22) is not used reflexively. Instead there is a special reflexive, **sui, sibi, se,** *self,* together with its corresponding possessive **suus,** *his, hers, theirs, its.*

26. When the reflexive **se** refers to the subject of its own clause, its use is simple. **Patria vobis se commendat,** *your country commends herself to you.*

27. The reflexive may stand in a subordinate clause and refer to the subject of the principal clause (indirect reflexive).

Ariovistus respondit neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse, *Ariovistus answered that no one had fought with him* (Ariovistus, **secum**) *without his own* (**sua** *refers to* **neminem**) *destruction.* Here **secum** is *indirect* reflexive referring back to the subject of the main clause, **Ariovistus,** while **sua** is *direct* reflexive, referring to the subject of its own clause, **neminem.**

The indirect reflexive can be used only in subordinate clauses representing the *words* or *thought* of the *subject* of the *main* clause; e. g., the infinitive clause above represents the words of Ariovistus: **Nemo mecum contendit,** *no one has fought with me,* etc.

28. RECIPROCALS. Latin has no exclusively reciprocal pronoun like the Greek ἀλλήλων, *of one another.* The reciprocal relation is expressed most commonly by **inter nos, inter vos, inter se. Hi omnes inter se differunt,** *all these differ from one another.* **Nos amamus inter nos,** *we love one another.* Note that no object is expressed with these phrases. (For **alius . . . alius,** and **alter . . . alter,** see 45).

29. **Ipse,** *self,* separates with emphasis the substantive to which it belongs from all others. But **ipse** often emphasizes the reflexive, standing in the nominative rather than in agreement with the reflexive. **Neque abest suspicio quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit,** *and the suspicion is not lacking that he contrived his own death.* So **ipse me laudo,** *I praise myself* (not **me ipsum**).

30. **Ipse** may represent various English idioms. **Ipse aderat,** *he was present in person.* **Ipso tempore,** *at the very time.* **Ipsa audacia,** *by mere audacity.* **Valvae se ipsae aperuerunt,** *the doors opened of their own accord.*

31. **Idem,** *same,* often renders the English *at the same time; likewise, also; however, nevertheless,* etc. **Quidquid honestum est, idem est utile,** *whatever is honorable is at the same time advantageous.* **Inventi**

multi sunt qui vitam profundere pro patria parati essent, iidem gloriae iacturam ne minimam quidem facere vellent, *there have been found many who were prepared to give their lives for their country, who nevertheless* (**iidem**) *were unwilling to suffer even the least loss of renown.*

32. English *the same as* is rendered by **idem qui, ac** (or **atque**, cf. 266), **ut**, or **cum**. **De his eandem fere quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem,** *in regard to these they have about the same belief as other peoples.*

33. POSSESSIVES. These are to be omitted unless they are necessary for clearness. **Pater filiam amat,** *a father loves his daughter* (**suam** unnecessary). **Fratrem vidi,** *I saw* (my) *brother*, but **tuum fratrem vidi,** *I saw your brother.*

34. Possessives are regularly used instead of a *subjective* genitive of a personal pronoun. *The love I feel, my love,* is **meus amor**, not **amor mei**, which means *love for me* (objective genitive, cf. 12).

35. **Suus**, the only possessive of the third person, is always used reflexively. The genitive of a demonstrative, therefore, is necessary to render *his, her, their, its*, where these are not reflexive. **Suam matrem vidit,** *he saw his own mother* (reflexive), but **matrem eius** (or **huius**, etc.) **vidi,** *I saw his mother*. The English *his*, etc., has both uses.

36. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. The more common indefinites are:

aliquis (**aliqui**, 37), *some one, any one*	**quidam**, *a, a certain*
quis (**qui**, 37), *any one*	**quivis**, *any one you please*
quisquam, *any one*	**quilibet**, *any one you please*
quispiam, *some one, any one*	**quisque**, *each*

37. Of the two forms **aliquis, aliqui**, and **quis, qui**, that in **-s** is generally used as a substantive; that in **-i** adjectively. **Aliquis eorum,** *some one of them*, but **deus aliqui,** *some god*. So of the two neuter forms, **aliquid** and **quid** are substantive, **aliquod** and **quod** adjective.

38. General differences between **quis** and **aliquis**:

a. **Quis** is less definite than **aliquis** (cf. English *any* and *some*).

b. **Quis** is used, with few exceptions, only after **si, nisi, ne, num**, and in relative sentences; while **aliquis** is not often so used. **Uti aliquem locum colloquio deligeret,** (they asked him) *to select some place for a conference.* **Iure iurando ne quis enuntiaret inter se sanxerunt,** *they bound each other by an oath that no one should divulge it.*

39. **Quisquam** and its adjective **ullus** are used chiefly in negative sentences or sentences implying a negative. **Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit,** *not even then did any one leave his place.* **Et quisquam dubitabit?** *and will anybody doubt?* (This implies, *no one will doubt.*) **Sine ullo maleficio,** *without any injury.*

40. **Quidam,** *one, a certain;* (plural) *certain, some,* is the most definite of the indefinites. **Sese habere quasdam res quas ab eo petere vellent,** (they said) *they had certain things which they wished to ask of him.* **Quidam ex militibus,** *one of the soldiers* (cf. 71).

41. **Quisque** means *each* as contrasted with **omnis,** *every.* It is not often used in the plural. **Quisque** regularly follows the word to which it belongs.

NOTE.—**Quisque,** *each of several,* and **uterque,** *each of two only,* are not to be confused.

42. **Quisque** is often used after a reflexive. **Suum quemque scelus agitat,** *each man's own crime troubles him* (his own crime troubles *each*).

43. **Quisque** is common with ordinals. **Quinto quoque anno,** *every five years.* **Cognoscit non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere,** *he learns that not one man in ten (each tenth man) is unwounded.*

44. **Quisque** is often used with the superlative. **Optimus quisque,** *every good man,* or *all the best men.* But with the positive write **omnes boni.**

45. **Alius,** *other* (of more than two), and **alter,** *other* (of two only), represent various English phrases. **Alter amat, alter odit,** *one* (of the two) *loves, the other hates.* **Alter alterum odit,** *one hates the other* (two only). **Quorum alius alia causa inlata petebat,** *of whom one alleging one pretext, another another,* etc. (more than two). **Alios alii excipiebant,** *they relieved each other (one another).* Cf. 28.

3. Nouns

46. APPOSITION. A noun in apposition agrees with the noun described in *case*, and (so far as possible) in *gender* and *number*. **Caesari imperatori,** *to Caesar the general.* **Voluptates, blandissimae dominae,** *pleasures, most alluring mistresses* (agreement in gender).

47. An appositive to two or more nouns is in the plural. **M. Antonius, Q. Cassius, tribuni plebis,** *Marcus Antonius and Quintus Cassius, tribunes of the people.*

48. An appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the genitive, because the possessive implies a genitive. **Moleste fero me tuum studium adulescentis perspexisse,** *I am sorry that I have tested your zeal as a youth,* i. e., *the zeal of you a youth* (cf. 34).

49. The Latin often employs an appositive where the English prefers a clause of time, cause, etc. This usage is common with **puer, vir, adulescens, senex, dux,** and official titles, **consul, praetor,** etc. **Ego Q. Maximum senem adulescens ita dilexi,** etc., *when a youth I so loved Quintus Maximus, who was then an old man,* etc.

50. With **nomen est** and the like the name is often attracted into a sort of apposition to the person. **Ei nomen erat Marco,** *his name was Marcus.* The simple predicate nominative is, however, not uncommon. **Ei nomen erat Marcus.** (For the appositive to a locative, cf. 140.)

51. PREDICATE NOUNS. A predicate noun is one connected with the subject by means of a copulative verb. The most common copulative verb is **sum.**[1] A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case and, where possible, in gender. **Caesar est imperator,** *Caesar is general.* **Galli perfugae videbantur,** *the Gauls seemed deserters.* **Cicero consul creatus est,** *Cicero was elected consul.*

[1] Others are: **fio,** *become;* **maneo,** *remain;* **videor,** *seem.* Also some passives: **appellor,** *be called;* **habeor,** *be held, regarded;* **creor,** *be elected,* etc.

52. VOCATIVE. A vocative generally follows one or more words of the address in which it stands. **Quo usque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra?** *how long, pray, Catiline, will you abuse our patience?* In solemn appeals or in exclamations the interjection **O** may precede. **O di immortales!**

Accusative

53. Neuter pronouns or adjectives are frequently used in the accusative with verbs which would take a different construction of a substantive. **Id te moneo,** *I give you this warning;* but **de officio te moneo,** *I warn you of your duty* (cf. 78).

54. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE. Two accusatives referring to the same person or thing are frequently used with verbs of *naming, making, showing*, and the like. **Eum consulem creare,** *to elect him consul.* One of the accusatives may be an adjective. **Se fortem praebere,** *to show himself a brave man.* In the passive both accusatives become nominative. **Is consul creatur,** *he is elected consul.*

Common words admitting this construction are:

appello, *call, name*	**facio,** *make*
dico, *call, appoint*	**reddo,**[1] *make, render*
nomino, *name, nominate*	**praebeo,** *show, present*

creo, *elect, create*

55. **Doceo,** *teach;* **rogo,** *ask;* **posco,** *request;* **oro,** *beg;* **celo,** *conceal*, often take an accusative of the person and another of the thing. **Docet te litteras Latinas,** *he teaches you Latin.* **Te rogo librum,** *I ask you for a book.*

56. **Peto,** *ask,* and **postulo,** *demand,* take the ablative of the person with **ab, quaero** the ablative with **ab, ex,** or **de. Auxilium a Caesare petere,** *to ask aid from Caesar.*

57. *To ask about a thing* is **rogare** or **interrogare de aliqua re.**

---

[1] For the passive of **reddo** use **fio. Castra tuta reddere,** *to make the camp safe,* but **castra tuta fiunt,** *the camp is being made safe.*

58. EXCLAMATIONS. An exclamation, if limited by an adjective or genitive, may be expressed by the accusative. **Me miserum,** *dear, dear me!*

Genitive

59. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS. The dependence of one noun upon another is ordinarily expressed by the genitive. This dependence is often, but not always, expressed in English by *of*. **Eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta,** *having noticed our army's way of marching in those days.*

60. If a noun denoting an *action* or *feeling* is limited by another noun, we may put the dependent noun in the genitive, whether it be subject or object of the action or feeling. *Mother's love* (subjective) or *love for mother* (objective) may both be rendered by **amor matris.**

61. The *objective* idea may be clearly expressed by means of a prepositional phrase with **in** or **erga**. **Noster in te amor,** *our love for you.*

62. Such expressions as *city of Rome, island of Paros,* etc., are usually rendered by an appositive: **urbs Roma, Parus insula.** With **flumen** the Latin construction is like the English. **Garumna flumen,** *the Garonne river*. **Flumen Rhenus,** *the river Rhine.*

63. Names of wars are expressed by an adjective, as in English. **Bellum Punicum,** *the Punic war.* Names of battles by an adjective or a prepositional phrase. **Pugna Marathonia,** *the battle of Marathon.* **Proelium apud Salamina factum,** *the battle of Salamis.*

64. Phrases like *Cato of Rome* cannot be expressed by a genitive in Latin; an adjective is required, **Cato Romanus. Lysander Lacedaemonius,** *Lysander of Sparta.*

65. GENITIVE OF QUALITY. The genitive is frequently used to express *character* or *measure*. **C. Volusenus, vir et consili magni et virtutis,** *Gaius Volusenus, a man of great*

discretion and merit. **Fossa pedum viginti,** *a trench of twenty feet* (in width). **Tridui via,** *three days' march.*

This genitive of quality or description may be used only when it is modified by an adjective. Hence, *a man of discretion* is not to be rendered **vir consili,** but **vir prudens.** **Tridui via** is allowable because **tridui** is a compound word, equivalent to **trium dierum.**

NOTE.—Quality may often be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative (cf. **117**); but *measure* is to be expressed by the genitive, while *bodily characteristics* generally require the ablative. **Tridui via,** *three days' march,* but **capillo sunt promisso,** *they are long-haired.*

66. The genitive of measure may not be used in dependence upon an adjective expressing *high, broad,* etc.; an accusative of extent (**135**) is required. **Fossa xv pedes lata,** *a ditch fifteen feet broad.*

67. The genitive of quality does not often limit a proper name, but depends upon a common noun in apposition with the name. **Volusenus, vir magni consili,** *Volusenus, a man of great prudence,* is better than **Volusenus magni consili** (cf. **118**).

68. Note that *Volusenus, a prudent man* = **Volusenus prudens** or **Volusenus, vir prudens**; *Volusenus, a man of great prudence* = **Volusenus, vir magni consili** or **vir prudentissimus**; *the prudent Volusenus* = **Volusenus ille prudens** (cf. **20**).

69. PREDICATE GENITIVE. The possessive genitive is often used in the predicate. It is common with **esse** and **facere.** **Eiusdem civitatis fuit,** *he belonged to the same state.* **Omnem oram Romanae dicionis fecit,** *he brought the whole coast under Roman rule.*

70. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. Any whole of which a part is taken is expressed by the genitive. This partitive genitive occurs frequently in dependence upon neuter adjectives and pronouns, but only when they are in the nominative or accusative singular. **Minus dubitationis,** *less hesitation.* **Tantum periculi,** *so much danger.* With adverbs. **Satis praesidi,** *defence enough*

Common words followed by this construction are:

multum, *much*
plus, *more*
plurimum, *most*
tantum, *so much*
quantum, *how much*
paulum, *little*
minus, *less*
minimum, *least*
satis, *enough*
parum, *not enough*
nihil, *nothing*
hoc, *this*
id, illud, istud, *that*
quod, quid, *which, what*
aliquid, *something*

71. More common than the partitive genitive with numerals and **quidam** is the ablative with **ex** or **de**. **Unum se esse ex omni civitate**, (he says) *he is the only man of the whole state.* **Pauci de nostris cadunt**, *a few of our men fall.* **Quidam ex his**, *some of them.*

72. If not a part merely, but the whole of a thing, be taken, there is evidently no occasion for a partitive genitive. **Hi omnes**, *all of these men.*

73. **Mille**, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective, but the plural **millia** is a neuter substantive requiring the genitive. **Mille homines**, *a thousand men.* **Duo millia hominum**, *two thousand men.*

74. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. Adjectives of *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, *power*, *sharing*, and their opposites, take the genitive of the complement. **Cupidus rerum novarum**, *eager for revolution.* **Rei militaris peritissimus**, *expert in the science of warfare.* **Plenus spei bonae**, *full of good hope.* **Praemiorum participes**, *sharers in the prizes.*

Common adjectives of this class are:

avidus, *desirous, eager*
cupidus, *desirous, eager*
conscius, *conscious, aware*
peritus, *experienced, skilled*
imperitus, *inexperienced, unskilled*
prudens, *knowing, skilful*
imprudens, *unsuspecting, ignorant*
memor, *mindful, remembering*
immemor, *unmindful, forgetful*
insuetus, *unaccustomed, inexperienced*
plenus, *full*
inops, *destitute*
potens, *ruling, controlling*
impotens, *unable to control*
particeps, *sharing*
expers, *having no part, free from*
similis, *like, similar*

75. GENITIVE WITH VERBS. Usually with **memini**, *remember*, and **reminiscor**, *recollect*, always with **obliviscor**, *forget*, the object, if it denotes *persons*, is expressed by the genitive. **Vivorum memini**, *I remember the living*. **Epicuri oblivisci**, *to forget Epicurus*.

76. **Memini, reminiscor, obliviscor**, take either genitive or accusative of *things*, but with neuter pronouns the accusative is regularly used (cf. 53). **Veteris contumeliae oblivisci**, *to forget the old affront*. **Si id memineritis quod oblivisci non potestis**, *if you bear in mind that fact which you cannot forget*.

77. **Recordor**, *recall*, takes de and the ablative of persons, the accusative (rarely genitive) of things. **Velim scire ecquid de te recordere**, *I should like to know if you recollect your own case at all*. **Pueritiae memoriam recordari**, *to recall the memory of childhood*.

78. Of verbs meaning to *remind*, **moneo** takes the ablative with **de**, while **admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio** take either the ablative with **de** or the genitive; neuter pronouns, however, are always in the accusative (cf. 53). **Monent de discordia**, *they warn us in regard to strife*. **Nemo est quin tui sceleris commonefiat**, *there is nobody who is not reminded of your guilt*. **Eos hoc moneo**, *I give them this warning*.

79. **Misereor**, *pity*,[1] takes the genitive. **Misereri mei**, *to pity me*.

80. With the following impersonal expressions the object of the feeling is in the genitive: **me miseret**, *I pity;* **me paenitet**, *I repent of;* **me piget**, *I am disgusted with;* **me pudet**, *I am ashamed of;* **me taedet**, *I am tired of*. **Eorum nos miseret**, *we pity them*. **Quorum eos paenitere necesse est**, *of which they are obliged to repent*.

81. **Miseror** and **commiseror**, *lament, bewail*, take the accusative. **Commiserari fortunam Graeciae**, *to lament the fortune of Greece*.

---

[1] Miseresco is poetical.

82. Verbs meaning *to accuse, condemn, convict*, or *acquit*, may take the genitive of the charge or penalty. **Accusatus proditionis,** *accused of treason.* **Capitis damnare** or **condemnare,** *to condemn to death.* **Levitatis convincere,** *to convict of inconstancy.* **Capitis absolutus,** *released from the penalty of death.*

83. Interest, *it is for the interest of, it makes a difference to,* takes the genitive of the person concerned; but in the case of the personal pronouns the ablative singular feminine of the possessive is required. **Magis rei publicae interest quam mea,** *it concerns the public welfare more than me.*

The object of concern, if an action, is most frequently expressed by an infinitive or an accusative and infinitive; if a thing, by the accusative with **ad.** **Magni interesse etiam ad opinionem Galliae existimans tantas videri Italiae facultates ut,** etc., *thinking that it was of great importance, too, for preserving the respect of Gaul (the opinion which Gaul had of Rome) that the resources of Italy should appear so great that,* etc.

NOTE.—Remember that **sua** can be used only as a reflexive.

NOTE.—**Refert,** *it is of advantage, it concerns,* should as a rule be used only when an indirect question follows. **Quid refert qua me ratione cogatis?** *what matters it how you compel me?*

84. Indefinite value is expressed by the genitive of certain adjectives of quantity and of a few nouns; as, **magni, pluris, plurimi** or **maximi, parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, nihili, flocci,** and a few others. **Magni opera eius existimata est,** *his services were highly valued.* **Frumentum tanti fuit quanti iste aestimavit,** *corn was as high as that fellow rated it.* **Non flocci facio,** *I don't care a straw.* Cf. **120.**

Dative

85. INDIRECT OBJECT. The dative is the case of the indirect object represented in English by *to*, less commonly by *for* or *from*. The indirect object may be used with transitive

verbs having a direct object. **His Caesar libertatem concessit,** *Caesar granted them permission.*

In the passive the dative is retained, the accusative becoming the subject. **His libertas conceditur,** *permission is granted to them.*

86. Some verbs take either the accusative of the person and ablative of the thing, or dative of the person and accusative of the thing. **Praeda milites donat,** *he presents the soldiers with booty,* or **praedam militibus donat,** *he gives booty to the soldiers.* So also **circumdo,** *surround,* and some other verbs.

87. The dative of indirect object is also used with many intransitive verbs meaning *favor, help, please, trust* (and their opposites), *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, indulge, spare,* etc. The commoner are:

accidit, *it happens*
adversor, *oppose*
cedo, concedo, *yield*
confido, *trust*
consulo, *consult for*
credo, *believe, trust*
diffido, *distrust*
faveo, *favor*
gratulor, *congratulate*
ignosco, *pardon*
impero, *order*
invideo, *envy*
irascor, *be angry with*
libet, *it pleases*
licet, *it is permitted*
minor, *threaten*
noceo, *harm*
obtempero, *submit to*
parco, *spare*
pareo, *obey*
persuadeo, *persuade*
placeo, *please*
provideo, *provide for*
resisto, *resist*
servio, *serve*
studeo, *be zealous for*

Huic imperat, *he orders him.* **Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime,** *Caesar had especially favored this legion and because of its bravery had the greatest confidence in it.*

Many kindred phrases take a dative — e.g., **fidem habere,** *trust;* **gratias agere,** *thank;* **gratiam habere,** *feel grateful;* **iniuriam facere,** *wrong,* etc.

88. Some verbs of apparently the same meaning as those in 87 take an accusative. So **adiuvo**, *aid;* **delecto**, *delight, please;* **iubeo**, *order*, **laedo**, *injure;* **veto**, *forbid*, etc.

89. If the verbs of 87 are used in the passive, the dative is retained and the verbs are impersonal. **Mihi persuadeo**, *I persuade myself*, but **mihi persuadetur**, *I am persuaded.*

90. Some verbs take both accusative and dative, generally with a different meaning: **consulere aliquem**, *to consult some one*, but **consulere alicui**, *to consult for some one's interest;* **cavere aliquid**, *to beware of something*, but **cavere alicui**, *to look out for some one;* **moderari aliquid**, *to control something*, but **moderari alicui rei**, *to moderate, allay*, etc.

91. The dative is used after many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con-, in, inter, ob, prae, sub,** and **super.** If transitive, such verbs may take an accusative besides. **Successit tibi L. Metellus**, *Lucius Metellus succeeded you.* **Vos sequor, vobis obtempero, vobis assentior**, *you I follow, to you I yield, with you I agree.* **Brutum classi praefecit**, *he put Brutus in command of the fleet* (acc. and dat.).

92. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. Many adjectives of *friendliness*, *likeness*, *nearness*, *fitness*, *acquaintance*, and *their opposites* take the dative. **Castris idoneum locum delegit**, *he chose a place suitable for a camp.* **Helvetiis erat amicus**, *he was friendly to the Helvetians.* **Collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius**, *a hill rose facing this and opposite to it.*

The more common adjectives are:

Friendliness, etc.:
- **amicus**, *friendly*
- **adversus**, *opposed, opposite*
- **contrarius**, *opposed, opposite*
- **carus**, *dear to*
- **familiaris**, *friendly to*
- **infestus**, *hostile to*
- **gratus**, *grateful, agreeable to*

Likeness, etc.:
- **similis (dissimilis)**, *like* (*unlike*)
- **par**, *equal to*
- **aequus**, *equal to*
- **iniquus**, *not equal to*

Nearness:
- **proximus**, *next to*
- **finitimus**, *neighboring to*

Service, etc.:
- **utilis**, *useful to*
- **perniciosus**, *destructive to*

Fitness:
- **aptus**, *suitable for*
- **idoneus**, *suitable for*

Acquaintance, etc.:
- **notus (ignotus)**, *known to* (*unknown*)
- **communis**, *common to*

NOTE.—Many of these adjectives take also other constructions; thus, those of *likeness*, together with their adverbs, take also **atque** (or **ac**, cf. **266**); those of *service* usually take **ad** with the accusative to denote purpose; those of *fitness* have often **ad** with the accusative.

93. Many of the adjectives of **92** are used as substantives also, and as such may take a genitive. **Amicus ei**, *friendly to him*, but **eius amicus**, *his friend*. So **similis** (cf. **74**), **par**, etc.

94. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR. The dative is used with **esse** to denote possession where in English we employ *have*. **Mihi autem cum Murena amicitia est**, *I have a friendship with Murena*.

95. DATIVE OF AGENT. The dative is used regularly with the gerundive to denote the person on whom the obligation rests. **Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum**, *Caesar thought he ought to cross the Rhine*.

96. To denote agent with all other forms of the passive, **a** (or **ab**, cf. **264**) with the ablative is regularly used (cf. **108**). **Se a Themistocle conservatum iudicavit**, *he considered that he had been saved by Themistocles*. This construction must sometimes be employed even with the gerundive (cf. **95**), when necessary to avoid ambiguity. **Quibus est a vobis consulendum**, *for whom you must look out* (the omission of **a** would cause ambiguity between **quibus** and **vobis**).

97. DATIVE OF INTEREST. The dative is used to denote the person *interested* in the action of the verb. It corresponds to various English expressions which may be roughly represented by *for*. **Praeterita se fratri condonare dicit**, *he says that he pardons the past (out of regard) for his brother*. **Ut aliqua in vita formido improbis esset posita**, *that some dread might be placed before the eyes of the wicked during their lifetime*.

98. The dative of interest may express advantage or disadvantage. **Non solum nobis divites esse volumus, sed**

liberis, *we desire to be rich not only for ourselves, but for our children.*

99. DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR END. The dative may denote the *purpose*, *use*, or *result* of a thing, and is often accompanied by another dative of the person *for whom*. **Dies colloquio dictus est,** *a day was set for the conference.* **Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere,** (Ariovistus said that) *the friendship of the Roman people ought to be an honor and protection to him, not a source of harm.*

NOTE.—The verbs most common with this dative are **esse, venire, ducere,** and **habere** (*consider*). **Laudi ducitur adulescentulis,** *it is considered praiseworthy in the young men.* This double dative, in which that of the person is a dative of advantage or disadvantage, occurs most frequently with **esse.**

The *plural* of nouns is not used in this construction. A modifying adjective is rare.

100. The dative of purpose may often be replaced by a simple predicate nominative. **Maximo laudi est,** *it is a (source of) glory to Maximus,* but also **Maximi laus est,** *it is Maximus's glory.*

Ablative[1]

101. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. The ablative of separation is used with verbs meaning to *separate*, *abstain*, *remove*, *deprive*, etc., and with kindred adjectives. **Agricultura prohibebantur,** *they were prevented from tilling the soil.* **Proelio abstinebat,** *he refrained from battle.* A preposition may also be used with nearly all the verbs of this class, and should be used where there is a clear idea of motion. **Ex castris exercitum educit,** *he leads his army from the camp,* but **castris egressi,** *leaving their camp.* Thus no definite rule can be laid down, but a preposition must, of course, be used with persons. **Sua ab Helvetiis defendere,** *to protect their possessions from the Helvetians.*

[1] For the ablative in constructions of time and place, see **128 ff.**

The ablative of separation occurs most frequently with:

abstineo, *hold from*
desisto, *desist*
egredior, *depart*
excedo, *go out*
excludo, *exclude*
expello, *drive out*
intercludo, *shut off*
libero. *free from*
moveo, *move from*
prohibeo, *prevent from*
solvo (absolvo), *release from*

Adjectives:

orbus, *bereft of*
liber, *free from*
vacuus, *empty of*

102. ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN OR SOURCE. The participle **natus**, *born of*, takes the ablative, sometimes with **de** or **ex**. **Amplissimo genere natus**, *born of an influential family*. When the ancestry is remote, **ab** is sometimes used. **Ab Ulixe deaque Circa oriundus**, *descended from Ulysses and the goddess Circe*.

103. ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL. This requires **ex** in classical prose. **Aquila ex argento**, *a silver eagle*. An adjective is often substituted: **Aquila argentea**.

104. ABLATIVE WITH A COMPARATIVE. The ablative may be used with the comparative of adjectives and adverbs instead of **quam**, *than*, and a nominative or accusative. This ablative is allowable only when the first member of the comparison is nominative or accusative. With other cases **quam** must be used to avoid ambiguity. **Constat nihil illo fuisse excellentius**, *it is well established that nothing has been more remarkable than he*. This might also have been, **nihil quam illum**.

NOTE.—When the second member of comparison is a relative, the ablative is regular. **Quo nihil peius erat**, *than which nothing was worse*. In all other cases **quam** may be used.

105. **Quam** is often omitted with **plus, minus, amplius, longius,** in expressions of number or measure, without affecting the construction. **Cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent**, *although they themselves had not more than eight hundred cavalry*.

106. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. The ablative is used with nouns, verbs, and adjectives to show in what respect they are applied. It answers the questions: *wherein? in what respect?* **Hortensius excellens ingenio, nobilitate, existimatione,** *Hortensius, superior in ability, noble birth, reputation.* **Creverat cum fama tum opibus,** *he had grown not only in reputation but also in resources.*

107. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT. To denote accompaniment, the ablative is used with **cum**. **Cum omni equitatu antecesserant,** *they had gone ahead with all the cavalry.*

The ablative without **cum** is common in military expressions where an adjective is used; but **cum** should be used where no adjective occurs, or if there is a numeral. **Omnibus copiis provolaverunt,** *they hastened forward with all their forces,* but **cum legionibus profectus est,** *he started with his legions.* So **cum legionibus tribus.**

108. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. The ablative is very often used to denote the means or instrument *by* or *with* which. **Neque multum frumento, sed lacte atque pecore vivunt,** *and they do not subsist much on grain, but upon milk and the flesh of their flocks.* The means *by which* and the agent *by whom* must be clearly distinguished. The agent *by whom* requires the ablative with **a** or **ab** (264). **Gladio occisus,** *slain by the sword* (means), but **a milite occisus,** *slain by a soldier* (agent).

109. The person *through whom* may be expressed by **per** and the accusative. **Per exploratores certiores facti,** *informed through the agency of scouts.*

110. With some Latin verbs the ablative of means is quite at variance with the English idiom. **Lapidibus pluere,** *to rain stones,* and so other verbs of the acts of nature. **A pueris nullo officio aut disciplina adsuefacti,** *from boyhood accustomed to no duty or training.* **Maioribus hostiis sacrificare,** *to sacrifice larger victims,* and so other verbs of sacrificing, except **immolo**, which usually takes the accusative.

111. The adjectives **fretus**, *relying on;* **contentus**, *contented with*, **dignus, indignus**, *worthy, unworthy of*, take the ablative. **Qua fortuna Alcibiades non erat contentus,** *with this good fortune Alcibiades was not satisfied.* **Fretus numero copiarum,** *relying on the number of his troops.*

112. Verbs of *plenty* and *want* take the ablative: **abundo,** *abound in;* **careo,** *lack;* **egeo,** *be in need of;* **compleo, impleo, expleo,** *fill;* **redundo,** *overflow*, etc. **Omnis hic locus acervis corporum et civium sanguine redundavit,** *every corner of this place was filled with heaps of corpses and blood of citizens.* **Diem iam quintum cibo caruerat,** *for five days now he had lacked food.*

113. The adjectives **onustus,** *laden with*, **refertus,** *crowded with*, take the ablative. **Navis onusta praeda,** *a ship laden with booty.* But **plenus,** *full of*, and **inops,** *destitute*, usually take a genitive cf. (74). So **refertus** when used of persons.

114. **Opus est,** *there is need of*, takes the ablative of the *thing wanted* and the dative of the *person wanting*. **Quid mihi aut vita aut civitate opus est?** *what need have I either of life or country?* The thing wanted may be the subject and **opus** the predicate. **Quaecumque opus sunt, noctu comparantur,** *whatever things are needed are prepared by night.* This latter usage is chiefly with pronouns.

NOTE.—**Usus est,** *there is need*, is extremely rare in good prose.

115. ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS. **Utor,** *use;* **fruor,** *enjoy;* **fungor,** *perform;* **potior,** *gain possession of;* **vescor,** *eat;* and their compounds, take the ablative. **Iumentis Germani importatis non utuntur,** *the Germans do not use imported horses.* **Illo munere fungebatur,** *he performed that task.*

NOTE.—**Potior** has a genitive in the phrase **rerum potiri,** *to become master.*

116. ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. Comparatives and words implying comparison may take an ablative of the degree or measure of difference. Especially common are **multo,** *much;* **paulo,** *little;* **hoc, quo, tanto, quanto, nihilo.** **Hos Suevi multo humiliores redegerunt,** *the Suevi rendered them much more humble.* **Supra pontem mediocri spatio,** *a little way above the bridge.* (**Supra** implies comparison.)

NOTE.—With superlatives use **longe,** not **multo** (7).

117. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. The ablative, *always accompanied by an adjective or a genitive*, is used to denote quality or to describe an object. The ablative may depend directly on a noun or be used in the predicate. **Silva ingenti magnitudine**, *a forest of great extent*, or **silva est ingenti magnitudine**, *the forest is of great extent.* Examples with a genitive are comparatively rare. **Clavi digiti pollicis crassitudine**, *nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

NOTE.—For the difference between the ablative and genitive of quality, cf. 65 N.

118. It is better not to attach the ablative directly to a proper noun. **Caesar, vir magna virtute**, is more usual than the ablative without **vir** (cf. 67).

119. ABLATIVE OF PRICE. The *definite* price of a thing must be put in the ablative. **Agrum conductum habebat sestertiis sex millibus**, *he had an estate hired for six thousand sesterces.*

120. The ablative often expresses *indefinite* value also, but of **tantus, quantus, plus,** and **minus,** the genitive is necessary (cf. 84). **Conduxit in Palatio non magno domum**, *he hired a house on the Palatine for no large sum*, but **signa aut non minoris aut etiam pluris emit**, *he paid either not less or even more for the statues.*

121. ABLATIVE OF MANNER. This ablative answers the question *How?* When the noun is accompanied by an adjective or genitive, the mere ablative is generally used; when the noun is unmodified, it is generally introduced by **cum**. **Non eadem alacritate et studio nitebantur**, *they did not fight with the same spirit and zeal*, but **cum studio nitebantur.**

122. Some nouns expressing manner are generally used in the ablative without **cum** (contrary to 121). So **casu**, *by chance;* **consuetudine, more**, *according to custom;* **consilio**, *by design;* **iure**, *rightly;* **iniuria**, *wrongly;* **ordine**, *in order;* **silentio**, *in silence;* **vi**, *by force*, etc. **Genabenses silentio ex oppido progressi**, *the Genabenses silently moving out from the town.*

123. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. The ablative may denote cause. **Qua spe adducti,** *led on by this hope.* **Seu ira seu odio seu superbia nullam vocem emisit,** *because of anger, hatred, or pride, he did not utter a word.*

This ablative is especially frequent with the past participles of verbs of *feeling:* **commotus,** *stirred up;* **incitatus,** *roused;* **perterritus,** *dismayed;* **incensus,** *fired,* etc.

124. Cause may also be expressed by **de** or **ex** with the ablative, **ob** or **propter** with the accusative. **His de causis,** *for these reasons.* **Propter latitudinem fluminis,** *because of the breadth of the river.*

NOTE.—If a person is the cause, then **a** or **ab** with the ablative must be used (cf. **108**).

125. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. A noun or pronoun in the ablative with a participle may be used to modify the predicate of a sentence. The combination may express *time, cause, manner, concession, attendant circumstances,* etc. Thus the ablative absolute is often equivalent to a subordinate clause, and many English subordinate clauses may be rendered by this construction.

Quibus rebus cognitis (time), **principes Britanniae optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta** (means), **frumento nostros prohibere quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis** (condition) **neminem postea in Britanniam transiturum confidebant,** *after learning* (or *when they had learned*) *these things, the leading men of Britain considered that their best course was to renew hostilities and to keep our men from getting grain, because, if this enemy should be conquered or cut off from returning, they believed that no one thereafter would cross into Britain.*

126. The place of the participle may be supplied by a substantive denoting *office, age,* etc., or by an adjective. **Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso consulibus,** *in the consulship of Pompey and Crassus.* **Duce Bruto Romam profecti,** *under the leadership of Brutus they set out for Rome.* **Exigua parte aestatis reliqua,** *only a small part of the summer remaining.*

Nouns commonly used in this way are: **adiutor,** *assistant;* **auctor,** *author, adviser,* etc.; **testis,** *witness;* **dux, iudex, consul, praetor, puer, senex,** etc.

127. Use the ablative absolute only when its substantive denotes a person or thing not mentioned in the main clause. Do not write: **Caesar, Germanis victis, eos in castra duxit,** where **Germanis** represents the same persons as **eos,** but write: **Caesar Germanos victos in castra duxit.**

Time and Place

128. CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME. Expressions of time take the ablative to denote *when* or *within what period*, the accusative to express *how long* (duration). **Tertia hora venit,** *he came at nine* (cf. 134). **Viginti annos natus est,** *he is twenty years old.*

129. English *ago* is rendered by **abhinc. Abhinc annos decem mortuus est,** *he died ten years ago.*

130. Some expressions which seem to us locative (137, 138) are temporal in Latin. **Pugna Marathonia,** *in the battle of Marathon.* **Bello Punico,** *in the Punic War.* **Ludis Romanis,** *at the Roman games.*

131. *Towards,* with words of time, is expressed by **ad** or **sub. Ad hiemem,** *towards winter.* **Ad** or **sub vesperum,** *towards evening.* **Sub noctem,** *just at nightfall.*

For is expressed by **in** with the accusative. **In diem certam indicere,** *to appoint for a definite day.*

Before and *after*, used adverbially in English and accompanied by a temporal phrase denoting *how long before* or *after*, are expressed by **ante** and **post** either with the accusative or with an ablative of the degree of difference (116). **Ante quinque annos,** or **quinque ante**[1] **annis, profectus erat,** *he had gone away five years before.* Neuter adjectives denoting an indefinite time are regularly in the ablative. **Paulo post,** *a little later.* **Non ita multo post,** *not long afterwards.*

But when *before* and *after* are prepositions in English, **ante** and **post** take the accusative in Latin, and the time *how long before* or *after* is expressed by the ablative. **Una hora ante solis ortum,** *one hour before sunrise.* The accusative, **unam horam ante solis ortum,** would mean *during the hour before sunrise.*

---

[1] Or **quinque annis ante,** but with the ablative **ante** and **post** should not be placed first.

132. The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute. **Annus fuit Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus,** *it was the year of the consulship of Pompey and Crassus.* It may also be reckoned from the assumed date of the founding of Rome (753 B.C.). **Anno urbis conditae (a. u. c.) sescentesimo quinquagesimo quarto**[1] (754 — 100), *100 B.C.* **Anno urbis conditae septingentesimo septuagesimo tertio** (753 + 20), *20 A.D.* Years of the Christian era may be expressed thus: **anno millesimo nongentesimo** (or **CMDCCCC**) **post Christum natum,** *1900 A.D.*

133. Days of the month were reckoned backward from the Nones, Ides, and Calends, the day of departure being included in the count. Consequently the *second day before* would be, by Roman reckoning, the *third* day before. **Ante diem tertium Kalendas Octobris** (often abbreviated **a. d. III. Kal. Oct.**) or **III. Kal. Oct.** (i. e., **tertio die ante Kalendas**), *September 29* (*September 28* before Caesar's reform[2]). The name of the month is an adjective limiting **Kalendas.** *One day before* is expressed by **pridie** with the accusative. **Pridie Idus Ianuarias,** *January 12.* If a date falls upon the Nones, Ides, or Calends, the construction is ablative of time (**128**). **Idibus Martiis,** *March 15.* **Kalendis Iuniis,** *June 1*, etc.

NOTE.—To turn an English date into Latin, you must know: first, the number of days in the Roman months, and on what days the Nones and Ides fall[3] (the Calends are always the first); secondly, the rule for reckoning (see above). Given March 10, first look ahead to the nearest reckoning point. It is the Ides, which in March fall on the 15th. Counting the 15th as the first day, we find the 10th to be the sixth day before the Ides. Expressed by the usual formula, this is **a.d. VI. Idus Martias.** Evidently the simplest method of finding this result is by adding one to the reckoning point and subtracting the given date—i. e., 15 + 1 = 16 − 10 = 6. If the given date be March 4, the method is the same, except that the reckoning point is the Nones. 7 + 1 = 8 − 4 = 4; ∴ **a.d. IV. Nonas Martias** = March 4. If the reckoning point is the Calends, the method is also the same,

---

[1] Notice that the ordinal, not the cardinal, is used. To find the required ordinal, if the given date is B.C., subtract from 754; if it is A.D., add to 753.

[2] Julius Caesar, in 46 B.C., reformed the calendar, giving each month the number of days which it has at present. Previously, March, May, Quintilis (July), and October had 31 days, February 28, the others 29.

[3] "In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides."

except that in adding one to the Calends we are really adding two to the number of days in the month preceding. Given June 26; 30 (the number of days in June) $+2=32-26=6$; ∴ **a.d. VI. Kalendas Iulias**=June 26.

134. The day was divided into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, the night into four watches (**vigiliae**). Consequently, the hours were longer in summer than in winter, while the watches were shorter. Approximately, we may express *six o'clock* and time between six and seven in the morning by **prima hora,** *eleven o'clock* and time between eleven and twelve by **sexta hora,** etc. In the night the statement of time is still less exact. Time between six and nine in the evening is expressed by **prima vigilia,** between three and six in the morning by **quarta vigilia,** etc.

135. CONSTRUCTIONS OF PLACE. Extent is expressed by the accusative. **Tridui viam prcccdere,** *to advance a three days' journey.* **Aggerem altum pedes octoginta exstruxerunt** (cf. 66), *they raised an embankment eighty feet high.*

136. Distance from a place is expressed by the accusative of extent or by the ablative of measure of difference (cf. 116). **Murus a planitie septingentos passus aberat,** *the wall was seven hundred paces distant from the plain.* **Hic locus aequo fere spatio a castris utriusque aberat,** *this place was about equidistant from the camp of each general.*

137. Place *in which* is expressed by the ablative with **in,** place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in,** place *from which* by the ablative with **ab, de,** or **ex. In Italia esse,** *to be in Italy.* **In Italiam ire,** *to go to Italy,* but **ad Italiam ire,** *to go to the border of Italy* (without entering the country). **Ad Caesarem ire,** *to go to Caesar.* **Ex Italia,** *from Italy,* but **ab Italia,** *from the border of Italy.*

138. With the names of towns and small islands, also with **domus** and **rus,** no preposition is used, but place *in which* is expressed by the locative, place *to which* by the accusative, and place *from which* by the ablative. **Romae,** *at Rome.* **Delum,** *to Delos.* **Rure,** *from the country.*

139. Observe, however, that towns and small islands require a preposition to express the idea of neighborhood. **Ad Romam,** *near, to the vicinity of, towards Rome.* **A Roma,** *from the neighborhood of Rome.* **Apud Tenedum,** *near Tenedos.*

140. If a common noun, as **urbs, oppidum,** or **insula,** accompanies the name of a town or small island, it usually takes a preposition. **In insulis Melitae et Sami,** *in the islands of Malta and Samos.* **Ad oppidum Gergoviam,** *to the town of Gergovia.*

141. If a verb of motion is accompanied by several nouns of place *to which* or *from which*, each noun must have its own construction. **Ad Caesarem in castra Genavam in Galliam nuntium mittere,** *to send a message to Caesar in camp at Geneva in Gaul.*

NOTE.—Observe that in the last example the English *in camp at Geneva in Gaul* implies place *in which*, even though following a verb of motion. It is equivalent to a relative clause, *who is in camp*, etc. Latin is more exact in its use of the preposition **in,** and with a verb of motion requires the construction of place *to which* (**in**=*into*).

142. Verbs signifying *to come together, call together,* as **convenio, convoco, cogo,** take the construction of place *to which.* **Copias in unum locum coactas vidit,** *he saw that the troops had been assembled in one place.*

143. Verbs of *placing* take the ablative with **in.** **Omnem spem in virtute ponere,** *to put all hope in bravery.* So with **loco, colloco,** *put, station;* **statuo, constituo,** *set, place;* **consido,** *settle;* **imprimo,** *press upon, stamp;* **inscribo,** *write upon;* and some others. But **impono** takes either the accusative with **in** or the dative. **Legionibus in naves impositis,** *having put the legions on board.*

144. The following words often express place *in which* by the ablative without **in: loco, locis, parte, partibus; dextra** (sc. **parte**), *on the right;* **laeva, sinistra,** *on the left;* **terra marique,** *by land and sea;* and many other words when limited by an adjective (regularly with **totus**). **Alieno loco,** *in an unfavorable place.* **Miles dextra ac sinistra muro tectus,** *the soldiers, protected by a wall on right and left.* **Totis castris,** *in the whole camp.*

4. The Verb

145. AGREEMENT. The verb agrees with its subject in person, number, and (so far as possible) in gender. The last is possible only in compound tenses. **Mulieres progressae sunt,** *the women went forward.*

146. With two or more singular subjects the verb may be:

(a) Plural. **Titus et Arruns profecti sunt.** *Titus and Arruns set out.*

(b) Singular, agreeing with the *nearest* subject. **Conclamat vir paterque,** *her husband and her father cry out.*

147. When the subjects differ in person the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second; the second rather than the third. **Ego et vos adsumus,** *you and I are here* (cf. **14**). **Tu et meus frater adestis,** *you and my brother are present.*

148. If several singular subjects are connected by **et . . . et, aut . . . aut, vel. . . vel,** etc., the verb is regularly singular. **Si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit,** *if any individual or people does not heed their decree.*

149. A collective noun usually takes a singular verb; but the plural may be used if individuals are thought of. **Cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent,** *since so large a crowd were hurling stones and javelins.*

150. VOICE. Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally in the passive. **Curritur,** *there is running.* The logical subject (if any) may be expressed by **ab** (or **a**) with the ablative. **A nostris pugnatur,** *our men are fighting.*

151. The passive often has a middle or reflexive sense. **Purgor,** *I clear myself* (*am cleared*); **lavor,** *I wash myself* (*am washed*); **delector,** *I enjoy myself* (*am delighted*), etc.

152. When **coepi,** *begin*, and **desino,** *cease*, are used with passive infinitives, the whole phrase is usually in the passive. **Vasa conici coepta sunt,** *the jars began to be hurled.* (For the passive use of verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., cf. **228.**)

153. TENSES. Table of ordinary uses.

KIND OF ACTION	PERIOD OF TIME: PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
INDEFINITE	Perfect Indefinite **amavit,** *he loved*	Present **amat,** *he loves*	Future **amabit,** *he will love*
PROGRESSING	Imperfect **amabat,** *he was loving*	Present **amat;** *he is loving*	Future **amabit,** *he will be loving*
COMPLETED	Pluperfect **amaverat,** *he had loved* (Complete in past)	Perfect Definite **amavit,** *he has loved* (Complete in present)	Future Perfect **amaverit,** *he will have loved* (Complete in future)

Note that the present and future have a double use, representing action both as *indefinite* and as *progressing*. So, too, the perfect, which represents action as completed in the present or as undefined in the past.[1]

154. PRESENT. In addition to the ordinary uses indicated in the table, the present is very often employed to represent past acts as taking place in the present. This is called the historical present, and is employed for the sake of *liveliness* or *variety*. **Volusenum praemittit. Huic mandat ut ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur,** etc. *He sends Volusenus on ahead. He orders him to return as soon as possible. He himself sets out,* etc.

155. The use of a present for a future, so common in English, is very rare in good Latin prose, and should be avoided. *I am going to-morrow* is **cras proficiscar,** not **proficiscor.**

156. With **iam,** *now;* **iam diu,** *now for a long time;* **iam pridem,** *now long since,* and other expressions of duration, the present is used of an

[1] The former is often called the perfect definite or present perfect, the latter the perfect indefinite or historical perfect.

action beginning in the past and continuing in the present. This translates the English *have long been*, etc. (cf. 159). **Iam diu in his periculis versamur,** *for a long time now we have been in the midst of these dangers.*

157. IMPERFECT. The imperfect is used to denote customary past action. **Ex quo quinquagena talenta vectigalis capiebat,** *from which he was accustomed to get fifty talents of revenue.*

158. The imperfect may denote attempted action (conative imperfect). **Ab tribunis militum legatisque retinebantur,** *the tribunes of the soldiers and the chief officers attempted to hold them back.*

But **conor,** *try*, with an infinitive, may always be used, and should be used to avoid ambiguity. **Partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt,** *they attempted to bring part of their forces across.*

159. With **iam, iam diu, iam pridem,** and other expressions of duration, the imperfect corresponds with the English *had long been, had long since*, etc. (cf. 156). **Iam diu lecto tenebatur,** *he had long been bedridden.*

160. By reason of its ordinary use to denote action as *progressing, going on* (see table, 153), the imperfect is a favorite tense in descriptive passages, where it chronicles the subordinate *details* and *particulars*, while the historical perfect states the *events* and *results*. **In omnibus collibus hostium copias conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura atque ita montibus mare continebatur uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset,** *on all the hills he beheld the forces of the enemy. The character of the place was such and the sea was so hemmed in by the hills that a javelin could be hurled from the places above upon the shore.* The imperfects **erat** and **continebatur** fill in details of the picture.

161. FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT. The Latin is much more exact in its use of these tenses than is the English. This is especially true in subordinate clauses—e. g., in conditions, and with **volo, licet, libet, placet, possum,** etc. **Veniam si potero,** *I shall come if I can* (*shall be able*). **In urbe si licebit manebo,** *I shall remain in the city if I may* (*it shall be allowed*). Future perfect. **Si mihi bona re publica frui non licuerit, at**

carebo mala, *if it is not allowed me* (*shall not have been allowed*) *to enjoy an upright state, at least I shall be free from a base one.*

162. PERFECT. The historical perfect (perfect indefinite, cf. 153) is the great narrative tense in Latin. For its relation to the imperfect, cf. 160. It is like the Greek aorist.

163. The perfect definite of verbs of inceptive meaning is virtually a present. **Novi,** *know* (*have become acquainted with*), from **nosco,** *learn* (*get acquainted with*); **consuevi,** *am wont* (*have become accustomed*); so **odi,** *hate;* **memini,** *remember*, etc. The pluperfect of these verbs represents an English imperfect. **Noveram,** *knew* (*had become acquainted with*), etc.

164. PLUPERFECT. The pluperfect (153) represents an action in the past as completed before another is begun. **Menapios oppresserunt, qui in suos vicos remigraverant,** *they crushed the Menapii, who had* (previously) *returned to their villages.*

165. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES. Such English expressions as *I am about to, was about to*, etc., may be rendered by the tenses of the first periphrastic conjugation. **Iturus sum,** *I am about to go;* **iturus eram,** *I was to go.*

166. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. **Amandus sum,** *I ought to be*, or *must be, loved*. Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally (cf. 150). **Currendum est mihi,** *I ought to*, or *must, run.*

167. TENSES IN LETTERS. In letters the Romans often used tenses from the standpoint of the receiver of the letter, instead of, as is usual in English, from the standpoint of the writer. It is as though the writer imagined himself in the place of the receiver and viewed his own *present* actions as *past*. **Quae ad te pertinere arbitrabar, quod in Ciliciam proficiscebar, existimavi me ad te oportere scribere,** *what I think*

concerns you I regard it my duty to write to you, because I am departing for Cilicia; i. e., when you receive this letter, it will be true that *I thought* I ought to write what *concerned* you, because I *was departing* for Cilicia. Here the English present, *I regard*, has become **existimavi**, and the other presents have become imperfects. In the same way a perfect (*I wrote*, *have written*) may become a pluperfect (**scripseram**), and a future (*I shall write*) may become a periphrastic imperfect (**scripturus eram**).

NOTE.—This custom was most common at the beginning or end of letters and with expressions of writing or sending a letter, **scribo, do,** etc. The Romans were not rigidly consistent in the matter—e. g., a general statement always requires the regular tense.

168. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. In subordinate clauses the tenses of the subjunctive follow certain fairly well-fixed rules of sequence. With reference to these rules all tenses are divided into two classes:

1. Principal tenses (all expressing present or future time).
   Present, future, future perfect indicative.
   Present and perfect subjunctive.
   Present and future imperative.

2. Historical tenses (all expressing past time).
   Imperfect, perfect, pluperfect indicative.
   Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.
   Historical present (cf. **170**).

General rule: Principal tenses in the main clause are followed by principal tenses in the subordinate clause; historical tenses by historical tenses.

PRINCIPAL TENSES

Rogo, *I ask*
Rogabo, *I shall ask*
Rogavero, *I shall have asked*

quid legas, *what you are reading* (incomplete)
quid legeris, *what you have read* (completed)

HISTORICAL TENSES

Rogabam, *I was asking*
Rogavi, *I asked, have asked*
Rogaveram, *I had asked*

{ **quid legeres**, *what you were reading* (incomplete)
quid legisses, *what you had read* (completed)

NOTE.—The above are the common tenses. The student can easily apply the rule to the others.

169. The perfect definite (cf. 153) is usually treated as a historical tense; but when the present time is clear, the principal sequence is occasionally found. **Id ius iurandum ita conservavi ut nemini dubium esse debeat**, *that oath I have kept in such a way that it should be doubtful to nobody.*

170. The historical present (154) is usually treated, according to its meaning, as a historical tense — especially when the subordinate clause precedes the main verb. But when the subordinate clause follows the principal sequence often occurs. **Simul servis suis Rubrius ut ianuam clauderent imperat**, *at the same time Rubrius ordered his slaves to shut the door* (historical sequence); but **dant negotium ut eum interficiant**, *they laid plans to murder him* (principal sequence).

171. If a subjunctive clause depends upon an infinitive, participle, gerund, or supine, the sequence is determined by the main finite verb; but with the *perfect* infinitive the sequence is usually historical. **Dico me scire quid legas**, *I say that I know what you are reading*, but **dicitur eum rogavisse cur veniret**, *he is said to have asked him why he came.*

172. FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. The missing future and future perfect of the subjunctive are usually supplied, where futurity is implied in the context, by the simple tenses of the subjunctive following the ordinary rules of sequence—e. g., the future idea is represented by the present subjunctive (after a principal tense) or by the imperfect (after a historical tense); the future perfect by a perfect (after a principal tense) or by a pluperfect (after a historical tense). **Iam, mox, statim**, often aid the future meaning. **Faciam hoc novum ut testibus utar statim**, *I shall do this unusual thing* (namely), *employ witnesses at once.* If it is desired to emphasize the future idea, where it is not implied clearly in the context, the periphrastic tenses may be used. **Et quisquam dubitabit quid virtute perfecturus sit?** *and will anybody doubt what he will accomplish by valor?*

Modes in Independent Clauses

173. The indicative is the mode of direct statements and questions. Some English phrases of possibility, propriety, duty, necessity, and the like, apparently requiring a subjunctive, are expressed by the indicative in Latin. **Dicere possum,** *I might say.* **Longum est omnia enumerare proelia,** *it would be a long story to recount all the battles.* **Aequum est,** *it would be fair;* so **par, satis, satius, melius, optimum, facile, necesse est; debeo, oportet, convenit, decet, licet,** etc., render by their meaning the apparently modal idea in English.

174. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE. Mild commands and exhortations may be expressed by the subjunctive. This use is most common in the third persons singular and plural and the first person plural of the present subjunctive. The negative is **ne. Cras veniat,** *let him come to-morrow.* **Sed satis de hoc; reliquos ordiamur,** *but enough of him; let us pass on to the others.* **Ne cras veniat,** *let him not come to-morrow.*

175. PROHIBITION. Negative command or prohibition is usually expressed by **noli,** *be unwilling,* with an infinitive. **Noli rogare,** *do not ask* (*be unwilling to ask*). **Noli existimare, Pompei, hunc esse exercitum,** etc., *do not think, Pompey, that this is the army,* etc.

NOTE.—Other methods of expressing prohibition are less common—e. g., **ne,** with the second person perfect subjunctive; **cave, cave ne,** *take care not,* or **fac ne,** *see that not,* with the second person present or perfect subjunctive.

176. SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES. Wishes, prayers, asseverations, etc., are expressed by the subjunctive, usually introduced by **utinam.** The regular negative is **ne.** The present tense (rarely the perfect) represents a wish as possible; the imperfect as unaccomplished in present time; the pluperfect as unaccomplished in past time. **Utinam veniat,** *may he come!* (possible). **Utinam veniret,** *would that he were com-*

ing! (unaccomplished in present). **Utinam venisset,** *would that he had come!* (unaccomplished in past). **Utinam ille omnis secum suas copias eduxisset,** *would that he had led all his forces out with him!* **Utinam P. Clodius dictator esset,** *would that Clodius were dictator!*

177. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. Questions implying *doubt*, *indignation*, or *impossibility*, take the subjunctive. They are most frequent in the first person. **Quid agam, iudices? quo me vertam?** *what am I to do, judges? whither am I to turn?*

178. RHETORICAL QUESTION. This is simply a statement made in the form of a question to which the answer is implied. It may take either indicative or subjunctive as the English indicates. **Quem enim Romanorum pudet uxorem ducere in convivium?** *who among the Romans is ashamed to take his wife to a dinner?* **Quid ego te invitem?** *why should I invite you?*

179. "POTENTIAL" SUBJUNCTIVE. Under this head are grouped several uses in which the subjunctive expresses a *possibility*, *polite statement*, *an opinion*, or the like, representing the English *should*, *may*, *might*, etc. The negative is **non.**

a. The present (rarely the perfect) is used of present or future time. **Roges me quid sit deus,** *you may ask me what god is.* **Velim,** *I should like* (more polite than **volo,** *I wish*).

b. The imperfect is used of the past. **Tunc diceres: "Caesar, cave credas,"** *then you would have said: "Caesar, do not believe."* So commonly **puto, credo, video, cerno, audio.**

Modes in Dependent Clauses

180. RELATIVE CLAUSES. Relative clauses are exceedingly common in Latin. The student should, therefore, note their various uses carefully. Their simplest use is to state a *fact* about the antecedent (181). They may also express a *characteristic* applicable to the antecedent not as an individ-

ual, but as a member of a class (182). They also denote *cause* (185), *concession* (218), *purpose* (188), and *result* (196).

181. Clauses introduced by relative words, as **qui, quod, quisquis, quicumque, ubi, unde,** etc., and stating *definite facts* about the antecedent, take the indicative. **Patria, quae mihi vita mea multo est carior,** *my country, which is far dearer to me than my life.* **Quam** [i. e., **virtus**] **qui adeptus erit, ubicumque erit gentium, a nobis diligetur,** *the man who shall succeed in getting this, wherever he may be, will be beloved by us.* **Quisquis est,** *whoever he may be.*

NOTE.—Observe that English *may be* after an indefinite relative is equivalent to *is* or *shall be*. Latin with characteristic directness uses the present or future indicative.

182. CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES. The subjunctive is used if the relative clause states a characteristic applicable to *any* object in the *same class*. This occurs often when the antecedent is not a definite object. **Quamquam nonnulli sunt in hoc ordine, qui aut ea quae imminent non videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulent,** *and yet there are some in this body, who* (i. e., *a class of men who*) *either do not see the dangers which threaten, or hide what they do see.* So after phrases like **sunt qui,** *there are some who,* **multi sunt qui, quis est qui, nemo est qui, nihil est quod,** *there is no reason for,* etc. **Sunt qui eam arma petisse dicant,** *there are persons who say that she asked for arms.* **Neque res ulla quae ad placandos deos pertineret praetermissa est,** *and nothing which was suitable for propitiating the gods was left undone.* **Si umquam fuit quod dis gratias ageretis,** *if there was ever reason for you to give thanks to the gods.*

183. Even after an indefinite antecedent, if facts and not characteristics are stated, the indicative is sometimes used. **Sunt qui piscibus vivere existimantur,** *some are thought to live on fish.*

184. If the antecedent is limited by **dignus, indignus, idoneus, unus,** or **solus,** etc., a relative clause of characteristic commonly follows. **Iine indigni erant qui impetrarent?** *were they unworthy to obtain their request?* **Non erit idoneus qui ad bellum mittatur,** *he will not be fit to be sent to the war.* **Causa est haec inventa sola, in qua omnes sentirent unum atque idem,** *this is the only case ever met with in regard to which all men had one and the same feeling.*

185. CAUSAL CLAUSES. When clauses expressing a reason or cause are introduced by **quod, quia,** *because,* or **quoniam,** *since, seeing that,* the indicative is used to give the speaker's or writer's own reason; if the reason rests, however, on the authority of another person, the subjunctive should be used, on the principle of a quoted dependent clause. **Quod metu cessisse credebant hostem, id morari victoriam rati, quod interesset amnis,** *because they believed that the enemy had withdrawn in fear, they thought the only thing which retarded their victory was the fact that the river was between them.* Livy states the **quod credebant** on his own authority, but the **quod interesset** is quoted from the thought of the Spaniards. **Vos, Quirites, quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite,** *do you, fellow-citizens, since it is now night, disperse to your homes.*

186. Causal clauses introduced by **cum,** *since, as,* take the subjunctive. **Cum se suaque defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt,** *as they were unable to defend themselves and their property, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.* **Quae cum ita sint,** *this being the case.*

187. When an English causal clause is introduced by *since* or *for,* followed by a personal pronoun or a demonstrative word, introduce the Latin clause by a relative pronoun or adverb, not by **cum**; **qui**=**cum ego, cum tu, cum nos, cum is,** etc.; **ubi**=**cum ibi,** etc. The verb is in the subjunctive (cf. **186**), and the relative may be preceded by **ut** or **quippe,** *as,*

naturally. **Domum suam istum non fere quisquam vocabat ; nec mirum, qui neque in urbe viveret neque revocaturus esset,** *almost nobody used to invite him to his home ; and no wonder, for he neither lived in town nor was likely to return the invitation.* **Medio alveo haudquaquam pari certamine concursum, quippe ubi pedes instabilis vel ab inermi equite perverti posset,** *in the middle of the channel they came together in a conflict which was not at all equally matched ; naturally, where an infantryman without sure footing could be toppled over even by an unarmed horseman.*

188. PURPOSE CLAUSES. Purpose or design is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut (uti)**, *that, in order to, to ;* **ne**, *that not, lest, not to ;* **qui** (=**ut ego, ut is**, etc.); **ubi** (=**ut ibi**, etc.) ; or other relative words. The tense is present or imperfect (tenses of incomplete action, cf. **153**), for an act which is only designed is obviously not yet complete. **Reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat,** *that he might be able to pursue the rest of the Helvetian forces, he had a bridge built over the Saône.* **P. Crassum in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne auxilia in Galliam mittantur,** *Publius Crassus is ordered to go to Aquitania, that aid may not be sent into Gaul.* **Interim ad praefectos mittit qui nuntiarent,** *meanwhile he sends men to the officers to bear word.*

NOTE.—For sequence of tenses, see **168** ff.

189. A clause of purpose which contains a comparative is introduced by **quo** (degree of difference, **116**). **Quod quo facilius perspicere possitis, diligenter attendite,** *that you may be able to see through this the more easily, give careful attention.*

190. A clause introduced by **ut** or **ne** is used as the object of verbs signifying to *request, urge, advise, persuade, permit, endeavor, determine, order, decree.*

Homines allegat qui peterent ne ad Sullam adirent, *he deputes men to ask them not to go to Sulla.* **Numquam a dis immortalibus optabo ut Catilinam ducere exercitum hostium audiatis,** *never shall I pray the immortal gods that you may hear of Catiline at the head of an army of the*

enemy. **Cui iam persuaserat ut in Italiam proficisceretur,** *whom he had already persuaded to set out for Italy.* **Huic permisit uti in his locis legionem conlocaret,** *he gave him permission to quarter a legion in this locality.* **Suis imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent,** *he ordered his men not to throw back at the enemy any weapon at all.*

Among verbs taking this construction are:

rogo, *ask*	**persuadeo,** *persuade*
oro, *beg*	**concedo, permitto,** *allow*
peto, quaero, *request, entreat*	**operam do,** *take pains*
postulo, *demand*	**impero, mando,** *order*
hortor, *urge*	**praecipio,** *direct, bid*
suadeo, *urge, recommend*	**negotium do,** *charge*
moneo, *advise*	**edico,** *proclaim, ordain*
censeo, *propose, move*	**decerno,** *resolve, decree*

A useful little rule is expressed by the old rhyme:

"With *ask*, *command*, *advise*, and *strive*,
By **ut** translate th' infinitive;
But not so after **iubeo** nor
Veto, nor deponent **conor.**"

191. When verbs meaning to *request, urge,* etc., are used in the passive, their subject may be a clause with **ut** or **ne.** **His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur non poterat,** *these could not be persuaded to remain longer.*

192. Substantives which are kindred in meaning to the verbs of **190** may be accompanied by a clause in apposition. **Nonnullae huius modi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis ad salutem contenderent,** *some opinions were expressed to the effect that they should abandon their baggage and hasten to a place of safety.* **Decretum fit, ut decem primi proficiscantur ad Sullam,** *a resolution is passed that the ten leading men shall go to Sulla.*

Such substantives are:

animus, *purpose* (especially in the phrases **eo, hoc animo**).
consilium, *purpose* (especially in the phrases **consilium capio,** *form a purpose*, **eo, hoc consilio**).
condicio, lex, *condition, terms* (especially **ea, hac condicione, lege**).
negotium, *business* (especially **negotium do,** *employ one for something*).
sententia, *opinion.*
decretum, *decree.*

193. The object of the following verbs is more commonly expressed by an infinitive than by a subjunctive clause: **volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo, patior, sino, cogo, conor, constituo, statuo, iubeo, veto.** With **licet** an infinitive is used as subject (235). **Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet,** *if he were willing to forget the old wrong.* **Bellum gerere conantur,** *they try to wage war.* **Portas claudi iussit,** *he ordered the gates to be closed.* **Neque remanere uno in loco licet,** *and remaining in one place is not allowed.*

194. VERBS OF HINDERING. Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing*, if affirmative, take a subjunctive clause introduced by **ne** or **quominus**. But with **prohibeo** and **impedio** the infinitive is much more common. **Deterrere ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur,** *to prevent a greater horde of Germans from being led across the Rhine.* **Quae (naves) vento tenebantur quominus in eundem portum venire possent,** *the ships were kept by the wind from the possibility of coming into the same harbor.* **Germanos transire prohibebant,** *they kept the Germans from crossing.*

NOTE.—For verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* negatived, see **200.**

195. VERBS OF FEARING. Verbs of *fearing* may take a subjunctive clause as object. *I fear* (or *do not fear*) *that* or *lest*=**metuo, timeo, vereor** (or **non metuo**, etc.) **ne**; *I fear that not*=**vereor** (**metuo** or **timeo** rarely) **ut**; *I do not fear that not*=**non vereor ne non. Metuebat ne cogerentur confiteri,** *he was afraid that they might be forced to confess.* **Vereri ut habeam satis,** *to fear that I shall not have enough.* **Non vereor ne hoc non probem,** *I have no fear that I shall not prove this.*

NOTE.—Purpose is often expressed by **ad** and the gerundive (**257**), and, if the main verb denotes *motion*, by the supine in **-um** (**261**).

196. RESULT CLAUSES. Clauses denoting a result of the main action take the subjunctive. The particles are **ut**, *that, so that, so as to*; **ut non**,[1] *that not, without*; **qui** (=**ut ego, ut is**, etc.), **ubi** (=**ut ibi**), or other relative words. Frequently

[1] Notice the difference in negative of result and of purpose (**188**). Similarly, *that nobody*=**ut nemo** (result), but **ne quis** (purpose); *that not ever*=**ut numquam** (result), **ne umquam** (purpose), etc.

in Latin, as in English, demonstrative words in the main clause may give warning that a result clause is to follow. Such are **ita, sic, tam, is, talis, tantus, adeo, eo,** etc. **Mons altissimus impendebat, ut perpauci prohibere possent,** *a high mountain towered above, so that a very few men could prevent a passage.* **Erat ea sagacitate ut decipi non posset,** *he was (a man) of such shrewdness that he could not be deceived.* **Quis potest esse tam mente captus qui neget haec omnia deorum potestate administrari?** *who can be so foolish as to say that all these things are not controlled by the power of the gods?*

NOTE.—For the sequence of tenses, see **168** ff.

197. A clause introduced by **ut** or **ut non** is used as the object of verbs denoting to *make, effect, accomplish,* etc. **Obsides uti inter sese dent, perficit,** *he effects an exchange of hostages (brings about that they give hostages to each other).* **Fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur,** *they made the departure seem very much like a flight (made that it seemed).*

The most common verbs admitting this construction are: **facio, efficio, conficio, perficio,** and **impetro,** all meaning to *bring about, accomplish.*

198. A clause with **ut** or **ut non** is used as the subject of verbs of *making, effecting,* etc., when they are passive; and of impersonal verbs denoting *it happens, it follows, it remains, it is added,* etc. **Perficiendum est ut homines te audiant,** *men must be made to listen to you (it must be brought about that they listen).* **Accidit ut esset luna plena,** *it happened that the moon was full.* **Accedebat ut tempestatem ferrent facilius,** *besides (it was added that) they weathered a storm more easily.*

Such verbs are: **fit, efficitur, conficitur, perficitur,** *it is accomplished;* **accidit, contingit, evenit,** *it happens;* **sequitur,** *it follows;* **restat,** *it remains;* **accedit,** *it is added.*

199. A clause with **ut** or **ut non** may be in apposition to a noun or pronoun. **Si illud fecisset, ut trucidaret inimicum,** *if he had accomplished that act of murdering an enemy.*

200. VERBS OF HINDERING. Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing,* if *negative* or *interrogative,* take a subjunctive clause introduced by

quin, *that not, but that*, or, less commonly, **quominus**, *that less*. **Retineri non potuerant quin tela coicerent**, *they could not be restrained from hurling (but that they hurled) their spears*. **Non recusamus quin Rosci vita dedatur**, *we make no objection to Roscius's life being yielded up*. **Quid obstat quominus sit beatus?** *what hinders his being happy?*

NOTE.—For the construction with these verbs when affirmative, see **194**.

201. VERBS OF DOUBTING. Verbs and other expressions of *doubting*, when negative, or interrogative with negative implied, generally take **quin**, *but that, that*, and the subjunctive. **Non dubitare quin de omnibus obsidibus supplicium sumat**, *not to doubt that he will inflict punishment on all the hostages*. **Ut nemini dubium esse debeat quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus**, *so that nobody ought to doubt that I am going to be of the same mind in the future*. **Et quisquam dubitabit quin huic bellum transmittendum sit?** *and will any one doubt* (implying that nobody will doubt) *that my client should have the war committed to him?*

202. Non dubitare, *not to hesitate*, commonly takes the infinitive. **Non dubitavit exstruere aedificium**, *he did not hesitate to build a house*.

203. TEMPORAL CLAUSES. If the action of a temporal clause precedes that of the main clause (often expressed in English by the auxiliary *had*), the verb may be either in the pluperfect subjunctive with **cum**, *when*, or in the perfect indicative[1] with **postquam, posteaquam**,[2] *after;* **ubi**, *when;* **ut**, *as, when;* **ut primum, cum primum, simul atque** (**ac**), or **simul** alone, *as soon as*. **Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est**, *when he had advanced a three days' journey, word was brought*. **Posteaquam Lucullus venit, plures gentes concitatae sunt**, *after Lucullus had come, more peoples were stirred up*. **Ubi de eius adventu certiores facti sunt, legatos mittunt**, *when they had been informed of his arrival, they sent envoys*. **Cum primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit**, *as soon as he could he hastened to the army*.

---

[1] The historical present may also be used, but is less common.

[2] A favorite form with Cicero.

204. When the action of a temporal clause is past, but represented as going on at the same time as that of the main clause (frequently expressed in English by *was*, or a participle in *-ing*), either **cum**, *when*, with the imperfect subjunctive, or **dum**, *while*, with the present indicative, may be used. **Cum se finitimis bellum inferre simularet, in Hispaniam legatos misit,** *pretending that he was making war on his neighbors, he sent envoys to Spain.* **Dum aedificant tamquam beati, in aes alienum inciderunt,** *while they were building like millionaires, they fell into debt.*

205. **Cum**, *when*, introducing a clause of present or future time, takes the present, future, or future perfect indicative; of a definite time in the past, if the temporal clause serves to date the main action, the past tenses of the indicative are used. **Ad quos (equos) se, cum usus est, recipiunt,** *to which they return when need arises.* **Cum prodierit, audiet,** *when he comes (shall have come) forward, he will hear.* **Tum, cum res permulti amiserant, scimus fidem concidisse,** *at that time, when many had lost their property, we know that credit collapsed.*

206. **Dum, quoad,** or **quam diu,** *as long as, so long as*, are used with all tenses of the indicative. **Dum civitas erit, iudicia fient,** *so long as a state shall exist, trials will be held.* **Quoad fuit in urbe, obstiti,** *so long as he was in town, I opposed him.*

NOTE.—**Donec** is for the most part a poetical word. Caesar never uses it, Cicero but rarely (=*until*). In the meaning *as long as* it is first used by Livy.

207. **Quoad** (and sometimes **dum**) *until*, takes the indicative when the temporal clause expresses an actual occurrence. **Neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad praecipites hostes egerunt,** *and they did not stop following until they drove the enemy in headlong flight.*

208. **Dum** and **quoad,** *until*, take the subjunctive when purpose or expectation is expressed by the temporal clause. **Dum hic veniret, locum relinquere noluit,** *until my client should come* (expectation), *he was unwilling to leave the place.*

Nolite expectare dum ego haec crimina agam, *do not wait for me to enumerate* (equivalent to *that I may enumerate*) *these charges.*

209. **Antequam** and **priusquam**[1] (also written **ante quam, prius quam,** cf. second example), *before*, introducing a statement of fact, take the indicative. The present tense is used of present time, the present or future perfect of future time, and the perfect of past time. **Antequam ad eam orationem venio, videntur ea esse refutanda,** *before I come to that part of my speech, those charges appear to need refutation.* **Neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen pervenerunt,** *and they did not stop in their flight before they reached the river.*

210. **Antequam** and **priusquam,** *before*, take the subjunctive when the action of the temporal clause is represented, not as an actual fact, but as anticipated or prevented. **Priusquam se hostes ex terrore reciperent, in fines Suessionum exercitum duxit,** *before the enemy should recover from terror, he led his army into the land of the Suessiones.* **Priusquam periculum faceret, Volusenum praemittit,** *before making the attempt, he sent out Volusenus in advance.*

211. CONDITIONS. In a simple condition of which the apodosis is stated as a fact—*if you succeed, I am glad; if you were successful, I was glad; if you* (*shall*) *succeed, I shall be glad*, etc.—the indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis. **Si me consulis, suadeo,** *if you ask my opinion, I advise it.* **Si umquam de bonis viris potestas vobis iudicandi fuit, hoc tempore eam potestatem omnem vos habetis,** *if ever you have had an opportunity of passing judgment on good men, at this time you have that opportunity in its completeness.*

212. The apodosis may have, instead of the indicative, an imperative, hortatory subjunctive, or any other form demanded by the sense. **Qui si**

[1] **Priusquam** is the commoner word.

hic permanent, mementote hos pertimescendos, *if they stay here, remember that these are the men to be feared.*

213. It should be noted that, if the condition refers to the future, Latin usually employs a future tense. English generally prefers the present. **Si iste unus tolletur, videbimur esse relevati,** *if he, and he only, is removed, we shall seem to have been relieved.* If the condition is thought of as completed before the conclusion begins, the future perfect is used in the protasis. **Faciam, si mihi fidem dederis,** *I will do it, if you will first promise me.*

214. If a future condition is less distinctly stated—*if you should* (or *were to*) *succeed, I should be glad*—the present subjunctive is used in both clauses. **Si per te liceat, belli casum sustineant,** *if you were to allow it, they would support the fortune of war.*

215. If the supposition is represented as contrary to fact—*if you were succeeding, I should be glad; if you had succeeded, I should have been glad*—the subjunctive is used in both clauses. Present time is denoted by the imperfect, past time by the pluperfect. **Si te parentes timerent, ab eorum oculis concederes,** *if your parents were afraid of you, you would withdraw from their sight.* **Nisi Ilias illa exstitisset, tumulus nomen etiam obruisset,** *unless the Iliad had been written, the grave would have buried his name too.*

216. In apodoses of conditions contrary to fact the past tenses of the indicative, instead of the subjunctive, are used of verbs signifying *necessity, possibility,* or *duty.* The imperfect is used of present (sometimes of past) time, the perfect of past. **Si privatus esset, tamen erat deligendus,** *if he were a private citizen, still he ought to be chosen.* **Deleri totus exercitus potuit si fugientis persecuti victores essent,** *the whole army could have been destroyed if the victors had followed up the fugitives.*

217. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON. Clauses introduced by the particles meaning *as if*—**ac si, quasi, tam-**

quam si, ut si, velut si, and simple **tamquam** or (from Livy's time) **velut**—take the subjunctive. Although the English idiom gives an implication contrary to fact, the present or perfect tense is used unless sequence requires the imperfect or pluperfect. **Parvi sic iacent tamquam omnino sine animo sint,** *babies lie there as if they had no wits at all.* **Velut si pariter utrosque murus texisset, utrimque procursum est,** *as if the wall had protected both parties equally, they ran forward from each side.*

218. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. Of the most common concessive particles (meaning *although*) **quamquam** usually takes the indicative; **quamvis** and **cum** commonly take the subjunctive; **etsi** and **tametsi** follow the constructions of **si**; **licet** (properly a verb, *it is permitted*) takes a subjunctive, which, by the law of sequence, is restricted to the present or perfect. Relative pronouns (equivalent to **cum is,** etc.) take the subjunctive (cf. **187**). **Hos cum finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt,** *although they had not been able to drive them from their territory, they nevertheless made them tributary to themselves.* **Tametsi video quanta tempestas impendeat,** *although I see what a mighty storm is threatening.*

219. CLAUSES OF PROVISO. **Dum, modo,** or **dum modo** (negative **dum ne,** etc.), *provided, if only,* take the present or imperfect subjunctive according to sequence. **Ipse sese in cruciatum dari cuperet, dum de patris morte quaereretur,** *he would desire to be put to torture himself, provided his father's death could be investigated.* **Est mihi tanti, dum modo a vobis periculum depellatur,** *it is worth my while, if only the danger may be warded off from you.*

220. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. If a question is not asked directly, but depends upon an expression of saying or doubt, it takes the subjunctive. The introductory word may be **num**

or **-ne**,[1] *whether*, or an interrogative pronoun or adverb. **Quid senatus censuerit exponam,** *I will tell what the senate has voted.* (The direct question would be, **quid censuit?** *what has it voted?*) **Quaesivit a me vellemne secum proficisci,** *he asked me whether I wished to go with him.*

NOTE.—Double indirect questions may be introduced by the same particles as double direct questions, cf. **282**. *Or not* is **necne** (less commonly **annon**).

221. INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Indirect discourse gives the thought merely, not the exact words of a quotation. It is introduced by a verb of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, or *perceiving*. The statement, *I am giving what they ask*, becomes, when quoted by another person, *he says that he is giving what they ask;* or in past time, *he said that he was giving what they asked.* If a declaratory sentence is thus indirectly quoted, all main verbs which represent an indicative of the direct statement take the infinitive; all dependent verbs take the subjunctive. In the example above, *am giving*, the main verb, is put in the infinitive; *ask*, the dependent verb, goes into the subjunctive: **dicit se dare quod petant,** or in past time, **dixit se dare quod peterent.** Observe that the English conjunction *that*, which introduces indirect discourse after verbs of *saying*, etc., is not expressed in Latin.[2]

222. If the main verb of the direct statement is an imperative, or an optative or hortatory subjunctive, it is expressed by the subjunctive when indirectly quoted.

mitte, *send,*
mittat, *let him send,*
} become {
(pres.) **dicit,** *he tells him,* **mittat,** *to send.*
(past) **dixit,** *he told him,* **mitteret,** *to send.*

[1] **An,** introducing *single* indirect questions, occurs most frequently in the phrase **haud scio an,** *I don't know but, I am inclined to think.* **Haud scio an fieri possit,** *I don't know but* (=*perhaps*) *it is possible.*

[2] It is necessary to analyze carefully in each case the English *that*. It may mean, *so that, in order that*=**ut**; *in that*=**quod**, etc.; or it may introduce the indirect discourse as above.

223. Questions in indirect discourse, when expecting an answer, are expressed by the subjunctive (cf. **220**). Rhetorical questions, on the other hand, not expecting any answer, are equivalent to declaratory sentences, and take the infinitive with subject accusative. **Num oblivisci possum?** *can I forget?* becomes **dicit num oblivisci se posse,** *he says, can he forget?*

224. The infinitive[1] is not influenced by the time of the verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc. In deciding what tense of the infinitive to use, consider what tense of the direct, unquoted statement or thought it is to represent.

A present indicative of the direct statement is represented when quoted by the present infinitive; a past tense (imperfect, perfect, pluperfect), by the perfect infinitive; a future tense, by the future infinitive or by **fore (futurum esse) ut** with the present subjunctive (imperfect when the verb of *saying* is past, cf. **171**). The construction with **fore ut** must be used of verbs which have no passive participle.

Mitto, *I am sending* becomes
- (pres.) **putat me mittere,** *he thinks that I am sending.*
- (past) **putavit me mittere,** *he thought that I was sending.*

Mittebam, *I was sending,*
Misi, *I have sent* or *I sent,*
Miseram, *I had sent,*
become
- (pres.) **putat me misisse,** *he thinks that I sent* or *have sent.*
- (past) **putavit me misisse,** *he thought that I sent,* or *had sent.*

Mittam, *I shall send,* becomes
- (pres.) **putat me missurum** or **putat fore ut mittam,** *he thinks that I will send.*
- (past) **putavit me missurum** or **putavit fore ut mitterem,** *he thought that I would send.*

---

[1] Remember that the subject accusative of the infinitive should regularly be expressed.

potero (without passive participle), *I shall be able,* } becomes {
- (pres.) **putat fore ut possim,** *he thinks that I shall be able.*
- (past) **putavit fore ut possem,** *he thought that I should be able.*

225. The tenses of the subjunctive in indirect discourse, unlike the infinitive, depend upon the verb of *saying, thinking,* etc., in accordance with the laws of sequence (cf. **168**), being present or perfect if the verb of *saying* is principal, imperfect or pluperfect if it is historical. The present and imperfect subjunctive, denoting incomplete action, represent a present, imperfect,[1] or future of the direct discourse; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, denoting completed action, represent a perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect.

Do quod petunt, *I am giving what they ask,* } becomes {
- (pres.) **dicit se dare quod petant,** *he says that he is giving what they ask.*
- (past) **dixit se dare quod peterent,** *he said that he was giving what they asked.*

Do quod petierunt, *I am giving what they have asked,* } becomes {
- (pres.) **dicit se dare quod petierint,** *he says that he is giving what they have asked.*
- (past) **dixit se dare quod petissent,** *he said that he was giving what they had asked.*

Dabo quod petierint, *I will give what they ask (shall have asked),* } becomes {
- (pres.) **dicit se daturum quod petierint,** *he says that he will give what they ask (shall have asked).*
- (past) **dixit se daturum quod petissent,** *he said that he would give what they should ask (should have asked).*

[1] If, however, the action of a subordinate imperfect is *completed* at the time of *saying* or *thinking,* it must be represented in quotation by the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

226. The examples of 225 show that the present and future infinitives do not influence the sequence of the subjunctive. But the perfect infinitive is generally accompanied by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, even though the verb of *saying* is principal. **Dicit se dedisse quod peterent,** *he says that he gave what they asked* (cf. 171).

227. Verbs of *promising*, *hoping*, *swearing*, and *threatening*, generally take the indirect discourse with the infinitive in the *future*, unlike the English idiom, which more frequently has a complementary present infinitive. **Polliceor me brevi venturum,** *I promise to come soon.* **Speravit se adfuturum,** *he hoped to be present.*

228. If the verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., is passive, the personal construction is common. **Caesar dicitur pervenisse,** *Caesar is said to have arrived.* But with the compound tenses the impersonal construction is preferred. **Nuntiatum est Caesarem pervenisse,** *it was reported that Caesar had arrived.*

NOTE.—**Videor,** *seem*, is regularly personal except in the phrase **mihi videtur,** *I believe* (*it seems to me*). **Credo,** *believe*, is impersonal in the passive (cf. 89). **Credebatur me abisse,** *I was believed to have gone.*

229. SIMPLE AND FUTURE CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. When conditions are indirectly quoted, the protasis, being a subordinate clause, is put in the subjunctive, and the apodosis, if independent, goes into the infinitive. In protasis[1] the tenses have the same distinctions as in other subordinate clauses indirectly quoted (cf. 225). The tense of the infinitive in apodosis[1] is settled just as in any main clause of an indirect quotation (cf. 224).

Simple Conditions

Si petunt, do, *if they ask, I give,* becomes
- (pres.) **dicit se, si petant, dare,** *he says that, if they ask, he gives.*
- (past) **dixit se, si peterent, dare,** *he said that, if they asked, he gave.*

Si petierunt, dedi, *if they have asked, I have given,* becomes
- (pres.) **dicit se, si petierint** (or **petissent,** 226), **dedisse,** *he says that, if they have asked, he has given.*
- (past) **dixit se, si petissent, dedisse,** *he said that, if they had asked, he had given.*

[1] Except when the supposition is contrary to fact (cf. 230).

Future Conditions

Si petent, dabo, *if they ask, I will give,* becomes
- (pres.) **dicit se, si petant, daturum,** *he says that, if they ask, he will give.*
- (past) **dixit se, si peterent, daturum,** *he said that, if they asked, he would give.*

Si petierint, dabo, *if they shall ask, I will give* (cf. **213**), becomes
- (pres.) **dicit se, si petierint, daturum.** *he says that, if they shall ask, he will give.*
- (past) **dixit se, si petissent, daturum,** *he said that, if they should ask, he would give.*

Si petant, dem, *if they should ask, I would give* (cf. **214**), becomes
- identical in form with the more vivid future when quoted (third example above). The difference in meaning can be seen only by the context.

230. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The protasis does not follow the sequence of the verb of *saying*, but always remains in the direct form. The verb of the apodosis, if it is active and has the passive participle, is expressed by the periphrastic perfect infinitive (**-urum fuisse**[1]); if it has no passive participle or is passive, it is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive introduced by **futurum fuisse ut.** The only distinction, therefore, between present and past conditions contrary to fact, when indirectly quoted, is in the protasis.

PRESENT. **Si peterent, darem,** *if they were asking, I should be giving,* becomes
- **dicit** / **dixit** **se, si peterent, daturum fuisse (esse),**
- *he says* / *he said* *that, if they were asking, he should be giving.*

PAST. **Si petissent, dedissem,** *if they had asked, I should have given,* becomes
- **dicit** / **dixit** **se, si petissent, daturum fuisse,**
- *he says* / *he said* *that, if they had asked, he should have given.*

[1] The periphrastic *present* infinitive (**-urum esse**) might be expected in the apodosis of a *present* condition contrary to fact, but it rarely occurs.

APODOSIS PASSIVE. **Si id petissent, datum esset,** *if they had asked for it, it would have been given,*	becomes	**dicit / dixit**	**si id petissent, futurum fuisse ut daretur,**	
		he says / he said		*that, if they had asked for it, it would have been given.*

231. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE. When a subordinate clause expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer, even though it is not introduced by a word of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., it takes its verb in the subjunctive (cf. 225). **Si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt,** *they ordered them, if they did not wish to be killed, to lay down their arms.* **Nollent** is quoted by Caesar from the actual command, **si vos interfici non vultis, arma ponite,** *if you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms.*

232. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION. A subordinate clause which depends on a subjunctive or infinitive, and forms an essential part of the idea expressed by that subjunctive or infinitive, takes its verb in the subjunctive. **Quis tam dissoluto animo est, qui haec cum videat tacere possit?** *who is of such a depraved spirit, that when he sees these things he can be silent?* The idea in **cum videat** is an essential limitation of **tacere possit.** A person's depravity is not shown by his mere ability to keep silent, but by his exercise of that ability when he sees such disgraceful conduct.

Imperative

233. The imperative expresses various shades of will, from strong *command* to mild *entreaty*. (For negative command, see 175.)

234. The present imperative is more common than the future, and expects immediate fulfilment. **Educ tecum omnis tuos; purga urbem,** *lead out all your fellows with you; cleanse the city.*

The future imperative is the regular imperative form of some verbs: **scito,** *know;* **habeto,** *consider;* **memento,** *remember;* **esto,** *be thou.*

NOTE.—The future imperative is used in legal formulas, general maxims, and apodoses of future conditions. **Amicitia his legibus esto,** *there shall be amity on these terms.* **Ubi nihil erit quod scribas, id ipsum scribito,** *when there isn't anything for you to write, write simply that.*

Infinitive

235. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT. The infinitive is a verbal substantive. It is used as the subject of **est** and many impersonal expressions—e. g., **pudet,** *it shames;* **licet,** *it is allowed;* **oportet,** *ought;* **libet,** *it delights;* **placet,** *it pleases;* **interest,** *it matters;* **necesse est,** *must;* **opus est,** *there is need;* **fas est,** *it is right,* etc. **Neque longius anno remanere licet,** *nor is it allowable to remain longer than a year.* **Legem illam appellare fas non est,** *to call that a law is not right.* A predicate noun is in the accusative.

236. INFINITIVE AS OBJECT. Many verbs take an infinitive to complete their meaning. These are especially verbs meaning *to be able, wish, be accustomed, resolve, begin* or *end, attempt, dare, hasten,* and *seem.*

A brief list:

possum, *be able*
volo (and compounds), *wish*
cupio, *desire*
incipio, coepi, *begin*
desino, *cease*
conor, *attempt*
audeo, *dare*
contendo, maturo, propero, festino, *hasten*
dubito, *hesitate*
vereor, *be afraid*
paro, *prepare*
neglego, *neglect*
cogito, *meditate*
meditor, *have in mind*
statuo, constituo, *resolve, decide*
consuesco, soleo, *be wont*
doceo, *teach*
disco, *learn*
scio, *know how*
debeo, *ought*
videor, *seem*

Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, etc., *but our men, because they were not able to keep their ranks nor to stand firmly nor to follow close to the standards,* etc. **In Britanniam proficisci contendit,** *he hastened to set out for Britain.*

NOTE.—Verbs of wishing take **ut** also, **opto** regularly so, but **cupio** always has the infinitive. Cf. **238** and **239**.

237. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the subject of expressions made up of **est** followed by a predicate nominative (substantive or adjective) and of some impersonal verbs.

A brief list of expressions with **est**:

aequum, par, iustum est, *it is right*	**necesse, opus,** *it is necessary, needful*
fas, nefas, *it is right, wrong*	**mirum,** *it is wonderful*
apertum, manifestum, *it is clear*	**verum,** *it is true*
honestum, *it is honorable*	**falsum,** *it is false*
turpe, *it is disgraceful*	**fama,** *the story is*

Impersonals: **interest,** *it matters;* **placet,** *it pleases;* **constat,** *it is established;* **oportet,** *ought;* **conducit,** *it is expedient,* etc. **Quod vos ignorare non mirum est,** *your ignorance of this is not strange.*

238. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of **volo** (and compounds), when the subject of the infinitive is different from that of **volo**; so of **iubeo,** *order;* **veto,** *forbid;* **patior** and **sino,** *allow.* **Volo te hoc facere,** *I wish you to do this.* **Eos in continentem adduci iussit,** *he ordered them to be brought to the continent.* (For the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse as object of verbs of *saying,* etc., cf. **221**.)

239. **Volo** and compounds also take the subjunctive with or without **ut**. With **velim, vellem, malim, mallem,** Cicero always uses the coordinate subjunctive (without **ut**). **Velim eas,** *I should like you to go.*

240. The tenses of the infinitive denote time relative to the time of the verb on which they depend. Thus the present infinitive describes an action as *contemporaneous* with the time of the main verb; the perfect, an action as *prior* to the time of the main verb; and the future, an action as *subsequent* to the time of the main verb:

PRESENT INFINITIVE	**dicit,** *he says* / **dixit,** *he said*	**se venire**	*that he is coming* (contemporaneous) / *that he was coming* (contemporaneous)

PERFECT INFINITIVE	**dicit**, *he says* **dixit**, *he said*	**se venisse**	*that he came* (prior) *that he had come* (prior)
FUTURE INFINITIVE	**dicit**, *he says* **dixit**, *he said*	**se venturum**	*that he will come* (subsequent). *that he would come* (subsequent).

241. Such English phrases as *ought to have done, could have done, might have done,* etc., should be rendered in Latin by the perfect or imperfect of **possum, oportet,** etc., with the present infinitive: **facere potuit,** *he might have done;* **facere eum oportuit,** *he ought to have done.* The English puts the tense of the infinitive in the past, while the Latin puts the tense of the main verb in the past.

Participles

242. The participle is a verbal adjective. Like a verb it may govern a case; like an adjective it agrees with a substantive. Participles denote time with reference to the finite verb of the clause in which they stand.

PRESENT: *contemporaneous* action: **moriens dixit,** (while) *dying he said,* etc.
PERFECT: *prior* action: **progressus dicit,** *having advanced, he speaks.*
FUTURE: *subsequent* action: **venturus scripsit,** *when intending to come* (about to come) *he wrote.*

243. The perfect participle of some deponents is used practically like our present. So **arbitratus, ratus,** *thinking;* **solitus,** *accustomed;* **ausus,** *venturing;* **usus,** *using,* etc.

244. The missing perfect active participle is supplied by the perfect participles of the deponent verbs; in other verbs by clauses with **cum, postquam,** etc. (203), or by the ablative absolute. **Cum venisset, dixit,** *having come he said.* The missing present passive participle is made good by clauses with **dum** or **cum** (204). **Dum de condicionibus agunt,** *while they were discussing terms* (*terms being discussed*).

245. ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLE. The present and perfect participles may be used like attributive adjectives. **Id ille intuens neque ignorans civium suorum consuetudinem,** *he, regarding this and not unacquainted with the habit of his*

fellow-citizens. **His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus,** *Caesar, informed of these events and fearing the fickleness of the Gauls.*

246. Attributive participles often express *time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession,* etc., and are thus equivalent to clauses. **Hunc infamatum a plerisque tres historici summis laudibus extulerunt,** *him, though defamed* (concession) *by the majority, three historians have greatly praised.* **C. Flaminium cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit neque multo post C. Centenium saltus occupantem,** *he slew Gaius Flaminius involved with his army in an ambuscade* (time) *and a little later Gaius Centenius while he was holding the passes* (time).

247. The attributive perfect passive participle often carries the main idea. **Ab urbe condita,** *from the founding of the city.*

248. After **video, audio,** and the like, note the difference in meaning between the infinitive and present participle. **Audivi eum vocantem,** *I heard him* (in the act of) *calling ;* but **audivi eum vocare,** *I heard that he was calling.*

So **facio, induco,** *represent,* take a present participle to indicate the act as taking place. **(Plato) eum induxit commemorantem,** *Plato represented him saying.*

249. The use of present participles as substantives in the *nominative singular* is rare. In the other cases it is common. Thus: **amans** should not be used to mean *a lover,* but **amantis, amantem, amantes,** etc., may be so used. This applies also to the masculine of the perfect passive participle with a few exceptions—e. g., **natus,** *son ;* but not to the neuter —e. g., **dictum, factum, institutum, responsum.**

250. The future participle rarely occurs with a noun in classical Latin (except in the phrase **res futura,** *the future,* singular and plural). Its only common use is in the periphrastic conjugation.

Gerund and Gerundive

251. The gerund is a verbal substantive with active meaning; the gerundive, a verbal adjective with passive meaning. The gerund may, therefore, be used alone like a noun, while the gerundive must always accompany a noun or pronoun

with which it agrees. **In legendo,** *in the reading* (gerund). **Liber legendus,** *a book to be read* (gerundive).

252. Instead of the gerund with an accusative, the gerundive construction is generally used. Instead of **pacem petendi causa,** write **pacis petendae causa,** *for the sake of seeking peace.*

NOTE.—If the accusative is a neuter pronoun or adjective, the gerund is used. **Studium aliquid agendi,** *desire of doing something.*

253. GENITIVE.[1] The genitive of both gerund and gerundive frequently depends upon nouns and adjectives, especially **causa** (sometimes **gratia**). **Summa difficultas faciendi pontis,** *extreme difficulty of building a bridge.* **Cupidus audiendi,** *desirous of hearing.* **Praedandi frumentandique causa,** *for the sake of plundering and foraging.*

254. When used with **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,** the gerundive takes the same form without regard to gender or number. **Sui conservandi causa,** *for the sake of preserving themselves* (not **conservandorum**).

255. DATIVE. The dative of gerund and gerundive may be used with **studeo,** *be eager for;* **praesum,** *be in charge of;* **diem dicere,** *name a day for,* etc., also with official titles and **comitia,** *election.* **Studeo libris legendis,** *I am eager to read (for reading) the books.* **Curator muris reficiendis,** *commissioner for repairing the walls.*

256. The dative may be used also after words of *fitness* (cf. 92), but **ad** with the accusative is better. **Locus ad egrediendum accommodatus,** or **locus egrediendo accommodatus,** *a place suitable for disembarking.*

257. ACCUSATIVE. The accusative of gerund and gerundive is chiefly used after **ad** (rarely **in**). **Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur,** *they promised a large number of ships for the transportation of the army.*

258. The accusative of the gerundive is also used in dependence on **curo,** *care for;* **conduco,** *hire;* **loco,** *contract for, let;* **trado,** *give over,*

[1] The nominative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive (cf. 235).

etc., to denote the *effect* sought. **Pontem in Arare faciendum curat,** *he had a bridge built over the Saône.*

259. ABLATIVE. The ablative of gerund and gerundive is used to express *means* and *cause* (rarely *manner*), and very often with **in, ab, de, ex. Hominis mens discendo alitur,** *the human mind is quickened by learning.* **In illo uno laudando consentiunt,** *in praising him alone do they agree.*

260. The gerundive alone or with **esse** (periphrastic) may denote *necessity* or *obligation.* **Oratio legenda,** *a speech that ought to be read.* **Dedecus vitandum est,** *disgrace should be avoided.* The gerundive of transitive verbs only can have a subject (cf. **89**). With intransitives an impersonal construction is necessary. **Nobis currendum est,** *we must run.*

NOTE.—But **utor, fruor, fungor, potior,** are used personally in the oblique cases. **In fungendo munere,** *in performing a duty.*

The Supine

261. The supine is a verbal substantive. The form in **-um** (accusative supine) expresses purpose after verbs of motion. It rarely takes an object. **Cohortes frumentatum mittit,** *he sends his cohorts a-foraging.* **Legati veniebant questum quod,** etc., *envoys came to complain because,* etc.

262. The form in **-u** (ablative supine) is used chiefly as an ablative of specification with **fas,** *right;* **nefas,** *wrong;* **honestus,** *honorable;* **turpis,** *base;* **iucundus,** *pleasant;* **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *difficult;* **mirabilis,** *marvellous;* **utilis,** *useful,* etc. It never takes an object. **Incredibile dictu,** *incredible to say* (as to the saying).

5. Particles

Prepositions

263. Most prepositions in Latin are used with the accusative. The following always belong with the ablative: **a, ab (abs), cum, de, e, ex, prae, pro, sine.** With **in** and **sub** the accusative is used of the *limit of motion*, the ablative of the *place where* (cf. 137). **In urbem pervenire,** *to arrive in town*, but **in urbe esse,** *to be in town*. **Sub iugum mittere,** *to send under the yoke*, but **sub monte considere,** *to encamp at the foot of a mountain*.

264. The forms **a** and **e** may be used before consonants only; **ab** and **ex** must be used before vowels and **h**, and may be used before most consonants. **Abs** is allowable only with **te**, but **a te** is more frequent.

265. With two or more words in the same connection the preposition is usually not repeated. **Ex Aquitania Cantabrisque,** *from Aquitania and the Cantabrians*. On the other hand, the preposition should be repeated if the individual words are to be emphasized or distinguished.[1] **Legati ab Haeduis et a Treveris veniebant,** *ambassadors came from the Haeduans and (others) from the Treveri*.

Conjunctions

266. Copulative Conjunctions.

et, *and*, connects both likes and unlikes.

-que, *and*, is always appended to the first word in its clause (unless that word is a monosyllabic preposition). It unites things belonging closely together.

atque, ac, *and*, adds a more important member to a less important. The member added is often a sort of definition or afterthought. **Ac** never stands before vowels or *h*, rarely before *c, g, q*.

etiam, *even, still*, etc., emphasizes the word to which it belongs and which it usually precedes.

---

[1] Repetition of the preposition is the rule after **et . . . et, nec . . . nec, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel, non modo . . . sed etiam, ut . . . ita,** etc.; also after **aut, vel, sed, nisi, quam, quasi, sicut, tamquam,** etc.

quoque, *also*, emphasizes the word to which it belongs and which it always immediately follows.

267. Instead of **et non, et numquam, et nullus**, etc., write **nec, nec umquam, nec ullus**, etc.

268. Where three or more members are to be connected, use a conjunction before each (it is not necessary before the first member) or omit conjunctions entirely (asyndeton); or connect the last two by **-que**. *The general, the envoys, and the soldiers* is **imperator, legati, milites,** or **(et) imperator et legati et milites,** or **imperator, legati, militesque.**

269. Two adjectives belonging to one noun are regularly connected by **et**. *A long, severe journey,* **iter longum et grave.**

270. ADVERSATIVES.

sed, *but*, the general word, both strong and weak.

verum, *but*, rare; like **sed**.

tamen, *nevertheless*, really concessive. Usually stands first; sometimes after an emphatic word.

autem, *but, however*, etc., weakest; introduces a contrast; often used in transitions = *moreover, furthermore*. It is always post-positive, generally in second place.

vero, *verily, of a truth*, emphasizes a statement. Generally in second place (always post-positive).

at and **atqui**, *but* and *yet*, very strong; contradict and introduce objections.

271. DISJUNCTIVES.

aut, *or*, excludes one member or the other; allows no choice.

vel, *or*, allows a choice; adds an unimportant contrast. It often introduces a correction, **vel potius**, *or rather*. **-ve** (enclitic) is like it, but rarer.

sive (seu), *or*, allows a choice; often denotes indifference or is used to introduce a correction, like **vel**; **sive potius**, *or rather*.

272. CORRELATIVES. Both copulatives and disjunctives are used correlatively.

COPULATIVE CORRELATIVES

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

cum . . . tum, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

non solum (modo) . . . sed (verum) etiam, *not only . . . but also.*
neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), *neither . . . nor.*
et . . . neque, *and (on the one hand) . . . and not.*
non modo non . . . sed ne quidem, *not only not . . . but not even.*
tam . . . quam, *so . . . as.*

DISJUNCTIVE CORRELATIVES

aut . . . aut, *either . . . or,* excludes one or the other member.
vel . . . vel,
sive . . . sive, } *whether . . . or,* allows a choice.

ADDITIONAL CORRELATIVES

modo . . . modo, *now . . . now, at one time . . . at another.*
ut . . . ita, *as . . . so* (cf. also 282).

273. INFERENTIAL (ILLATIVE) CONJUNCTIONS.

itaque, *and so,* betokens an *actual* result following a preceding statement. It stands first.

ergo, *therefore,* points to a *logical* inference. Usually stands first.

igitur, *therefore,* is used chiefly of opinions based on a preceding statement. It is usually post-positive.

proinde, *therefore,* is used in exhortations or commands based upon what precedes: **proinde abite,** *therefore go.*

Numerous phrases may replace these conjunctions: **qua re, qua ex re, quibus ex rebus, qua de causa,** etc. Note that an illative conjunction cannot be used with a copulative—e. g., **et ergo,** *and therefore.* Write **propterque eam causam,** and the like.

274. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS.

nam, *for,* always begins a sentence or clause.

enim, *for,* is always post-positive.

etenim, *for,* begins the sentence.

Adverbs

275. NEGATIVES. **Non,** the general negative, may negative a whole sentence or a single word.

NOTE.—**Haud** negatives single words. Of verbs it is common only with **scio** (cf. p. 47, foot-note 1).

276. Two negatives make an affirmative. **Non ignoro,** *I am not ignorant* (*I know*), **non nego,** *I do not deny* (*I confess*). But after a general

negative the distributives **neque . . . neque**, or the emphasizing negatives **ne . . . quidem, non modo**, may follow without destroying the negation. **Nemo neque deus neque homo semper vigilat**, *nobody, either god or man, is always on the watch.*

277. Note the difference in meaning caused by the position of **non**.

nemo non, *everybody*, but **non nemo**, *somebody*.
nihil non, *everything*, but **non nihil**, *something*.
nulli non, *all*, but **non nulli**, *some*.
numquam non, *always*, but **non numquam**, *sometimes*.

278. Where a negative proposition is connected with the preceding by **tamen, enim, vero**, etc., **neque** is to be used instead of **non**.

279. **Ne** is used with the various forms of independent subjunctive (cf. 174 ff.), except the potential (179), and with many subordinate clauses (cf. 188 ff).

Interrogative Sentences

280. Interrogative sentences may be classified as:

(a) Word-questions, introduced by some interrogative word. **Quid censes?** *what is your opinion?* Other like words are: **qualis**, *of what sort?* **quotiens**, *how many times?* **quantus**, *how great?* **ubi**, *where?* etc.

(b) Sentence-questions, introduced by **nonne, num, -ne**, or by no interrogative particle at all, the question being indicated by the tone of voice, as in English.

281. Simple word-questions (a) require no rules except as to mode (cf. 177-178).

Of the particles introducing sentence-questions (b), **-ne** is used in real questions for information and is attached enclitically to the emphatic word to which the question applies. **Nonne** expects the answer *Yes*, **num** the answer *No*. **Adestne?** *is he here?* (question for information, no answer implied). **Nonne adest?** *isn't he here?* or *he's here, isn't he?* (answer *Yes* expected). **Num adest?** *is he here?* or *he isn't here, is he?* (answer *No* expected).

NOTE.—Questions of special emphasis, such as those expressing indignation, refutation of an opponent, surprise, etc., may be introduced by **an**. **An quod non venerunt, de eorum fide dubitatis?** *can it be that, because they have not come, you are harboring doubts of their loyalty?*

282. Double or disjunctive questions have in the first member **utrum, -ne,** *whether*, or less often no particle at all; in the second member **an,** *or*. *Or not* is **annon**. **Utrum adest an venit?** *is he present or is he coming?* **Bonumne an malum est?** *is it good or bad?* **Videsne annon?** *do you see or not?*

(For rhetorical questions, cf. **178**; deliberative **177**; indirect questions, **220**.)

283. ANSWERS. Latin has no words meaning exclusively *Yes* or *No*. The most common form of answer consists in repeating the word to which the question refers. **Adestne miles?** *is the soldier here?* **Adest,** *yes;* or **non adest,** *no*.

NOTE.—*Yes* is further represented by **ita, etiam, vero, sane,** etc. **Aut etiam aut non respondere,** *to answer yes or no*.

No is represented by **non,** (emphatically) by **minime, minime vero, non ita, nihil,** etc. **Coges me? minime,** *will you compel me? not at all* (*by no means*).

6. Order of Words and Arrangement of Clauses

284. The order of words in Latin is much more flexible than in English. There are two general types of order, the grammatical and the rhetorical.

285. GRAMMATICAL ORDER. The words belonging together grammatically are placed together.

Subject.	Modifiers of Subject.	Modifiers of Predicate.	Predicate.
Iphicrates,	**Atheniensis,**	**non tam magnitudine rerum gestarum quam disciplina militari**	**nobilitatus est.**

This is the usual order where no part of the sentence is to be particularly emphasized or where it is not necessary to indicate the connection with preceding or following sentences.

286. RHETORICAL ORDER. Since, however, the order is not usually determined within each sentence, but depends upon the relation of the sentence to others surrounding it, the grammatical order (**285**) is constantly altered by numerous influences. Any such deviation from the grammatical order, for whatever reason, is a case of rhetorical order. This order is by far the more important. The reasons for it may be grouped under three heads: (1) desire for emphasis on some word or phrase; (2) desire to indicate clearly the connection between the sentence and others; (3) euphony or rhythm.

287. (1) EMPHASIS. There are three common methods of securing emphasis:

(a) By placing the words to be emphasized first[1] or very early in the sentence. **Proelio supersedere statuit; cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtute posset, periclitabatur,** *he decided to refrain from a pitched battle; yet daily* (the emphatic word), *by cavalry skirmishes* (hardly less emphatic, being contrasted with **proelio**, which is the most emphatic word of all), *trial was made of the enemy's mettle.* **Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas,** *the time* (the main thing) *was so short,* etc..

(b) By anaphora, the repetition of a single word in the same position or the recurrence of a series of words in the same order. **Sed pleni omnes sunt libri, plenae sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas,** *but full of examples are all books, full are the utterances of philosophers, full is antiquity.* **Transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum** (here the words are different, but the order is the same), *to cross a broad stream, mount lofty banks, approach a very difficult position,* etc.

(c) By chiasmus, contrasting one pair of words with another by arranging the second in the reverse order. **Quam diu vixit, vixit in luctu,** *as long as he lived he lived in grief.*

NOTE.—Anaphora and chiasmus are more than mere rhetorical figures; they are inherent in the language. By these two figures emphasis may be secured in

[1] The occurrence of an emphatic word late in a sentence is almost always due to the fact that the word itself expresses emphasis (**ipse, nemo,** etc.), or is an afterthought, or falls under one of the principles of anaphora or chiasmus (**287**, b and c).

any part of the sentence. Chiasmus is named from the Greek letter χ, the "criss-cross order," **foris arma, consilium domi.**

288. (2) CONNECTION BETWEEN SENTENCES. The order is often influenced by the desire to indicate clearly the relation of one sentence to another. It is well to place early in a sentence any words referring back to a preceding sentence. **Palus erat inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant,** *there was a marsh between our army and that of the enemy. The enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross this* (**Hanc** put first to recall **palus**). To this principle is due the frequent use of many connecting words and phrases in Latin: **qua ex re, quibus rebus cognitis, qua de causa, quo facto,** etc.

289. (3) EUPHONY AND RHYTHM. Of this principle we know little save what the Romans themselves have told us. They avoided successions of many short words, of long words, of words with like endings, and poetic rhythm in prose, striving to produce a style pleasant to the ear.

Order of Single Words

290. SUBSTANTIVES. An appositive regularly follows; as, **Cicero consul.**

For the attributive genitive no rule can be laid down.

291. (a) Verbs like **possum, audeo, volo** (and compounds), used like English auxiliary verbs *may, might, would,* etc., regularly follow a dependent infinitive: **dicere non ausim,** *I should not venture to say;* but, when these verbs are not weakened in meaning they precede: **audeo dicere,** *I dare to say.*

(b) The parts of **esse** stand first when they denote reality or existence: **fuit, fuit ista quondam in hac re publica virtus,** *there did exist, there did exist,* etc.

NOTE.—In Cicero the infinitive **esse** usually follows an auxiliary. **Inquam,** *say,* always follows one or more words of the quotation; **credo,** *believe,* and **opinor,** *suppose,* are often used parenthetically in the midst of a direct statement.

292. ADJECTIVES. (a) The common adjectives, **bonus, malus,** etc., usually precede their noun. An adjective becomes emphatic by being placed out of its usual position. This is seen in the figure called hyperbaton: **magna proponit his qui occiderint praemia,** *great are the rewards he offers those who shall kill* (*him*).

(b) But an adjective accompanied by a phrase regularly follows. **Virtus digna summo honore,** *virtue worthy of the greatest honor.*

(c) Of numerals the cardinals regularly precede, the ordinals follow. **Sex dies,** but **dies sexta.**

293. PRONOUNS. (a) Demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns regularly precede the word to which they belong.

NOTE.—But **ille** often follows—regularly with a possessive.

(b) Possessives regularly follow the substantive unless they are emphatic.

(c) Indefinites regularly follow the substantive.

294. ADVERBS. Adverbs regularly stand next to and before the word to which they belong. If very emphatic they may begin the clause (cf. **287** a). **Tam** and **quam,** however, are often separated by some short word from the word they limit. **Quam sit iusta (causa) videamus,** *let us see how justifiable the reason is.*

295. PREPOSITIONS. Prepositions, except **tenus** and **versus,** regularly precede their case. If an adjective accompanies the noun, it often precedes a monosyllabic preposition: **quam ob rem, his de causis, summa cum laude.**

NOTE.—The preposition **cum** is attached enclitically to the personal pronouns: **tecum, nobiscum;** and often to the relative: **quocum, quibuscum.**

(For the order of conjunctions, see **266–274.**)

Arrangement of Clauses in a Period

296. A period is a compound sentence, containing one or more subordinate clauses, in which the meaning is kept suspended until the close. Latin tends naturally to assume the periodic structure, and in this differs fundamentally from English, which prefers coördination. Hence a series of coördinate clauses or sentences in English may often be fused into one Latin period, thus dispensing with the excessively frequent English "*and.*" Cf. **310.**

NOTE.—All Latin periods, however complicated, may be reduced by analysis to one of three simple types:

1. One principal (A) and one subordinate (a) clause.

2. One principal (A) and two subordinate (a and b) clauses, independent of each other and not connected by **et.**

3. One principal (A) and two subordinate (a and α) clauses, one of which depends on the other.

Under 1, there are four possible arrangements of the period; under 2, five simple combinations; under 3, no fewer than fifteen combinations, some of which are rare. By the addition of other clauses almost endless combinations are possible. It is good practice for the student to analyze complicated periods by reference to these three simple types—e. g., **Romam ut ex Sicilia redii** (a), **cum iste atque istius amici sermones eius modi dissipassent** (b), **me magna pecunia a vera accusatione esse deductum** (β), **tametsi probabatur nemini** (c), **tamen usque eo timui** (A), **ne quis de mea fide atque integritate dubitaret** (d) **donec ad reiciundos iudices venimus** (e). Here are no fewer than five clauses independent of each other, one of which has a clause of the second grade (β) dependent on it. It belongs, therefore, to (3), A : a : α.

297. By reason of this flexibility of arrangement, Latin possesses the power to produce the most subtle contrasts. In practice the student should aim first at perfect clearness. The use of many subordinate clauses should generally be avoided. If many are necessary, it is usually better to arrange them side by side, avoiding insertion, except in the case of very short clauses. This is the general practice of Cicero, the master of the periodic style.

7. Remarks on Style

a. Substantives

298. The English, like other modern languages, possesses many more substantives than the Latin. Hence we must carefully analyze English nouns in order to find the best Latin equivalent. The following are some useful principles.

299. A *general* Latin term may represent a *special* English noun. *Taste* (*good judgment*) is **iudicium**. *Imagination* (as *thought*) is **cogitatio**. *Prince* is **rex, regulus**. *Etymology* is **vis verbi**.

NOTE.—Mark the very wide use of **res**. It may mean any thing provided the context makes it clear—e. g., *state*, *circumstance*, *proposal*, *experiment*, etc.

300. The *concrete* in Latin may represent an English *abstract*. *Aristocracy* = **principes**; *the philosophy of Socrates* = **Socrates**; *style of Caesar*

= **Caesar.** So names of peoples are often put for the country. *Alliance between Gaul and Germany* = **Gallorum et Britannorum foedus.**

301. Often the best way to render an English noun is to employ a Latin adjective. *By an equality of services* = **paribus officiis**; *journey to Asia* = **iter Asiaticum**; *war with the slaves* = **bellum servile.**

NOTE.—See the varied use of adjectives as substantives, **3** and **4**. For the substantive use of participles, see **249**.

302. Many English substantives are best rendered by a phrase in Latin. *Patriotism* = **studium rei publicae.** A relative clause is very common. *Standard-bearer* = **is qui aquilam fert.** *A subject* = **is qui paret.** So, too, other clauses may be used.

303. An English substantive may disappear in the Latin rendering, or be represented by a pronoun. The latter is very common where a noun has once been written. A pronoun may, in fact, represent any thought or object made clear by the context. *There is a river, the Saône, which empties into the Rhone. This river the Helvetians were crossing*, is **flumen est Arar, quod in Rhodanum influit. Id Helvetii transibant.**

304. The repetition of proper names is not so common in Latin as in English. When once the persons are named the Latin prefers to represent them by pronouns, **is, ille, hic,** etc. *Caesar demanded hostages of the Gauls. The Gauls refused to send them*, etc., is **Caesar a Gallis obsides postulavit. Illi autem,** etc., cf. **303.**

b. Adjectives

305. English adjectives in *-ble* are often to be rendered by the perfect passive participle: *invincible* = **invictus**, *inviolable* = **inviolatus**, *incorruptible* = **incorruptus**, *immovable* = **immotus.** Also by **ad** and a gerund: *intelligible* = **facilis ad intellegendum**; or by a relative clause: *visible* = **quod cerni potest.** Gerundives, too, may be used in this way: *admirable* = **admirandus**, *tolerable* = **tolerandus.**

NOTE.—So adjectives in *-less*, where no exact equivalent exists, may be rendered by a phrase with **vacuus** or **sine**: *a treeless plain* = **ager arboribus vacuus**, or **sine arboribus.**

306. Adjectives which are not indispensable even in English may be omitted in Latin—e. g., *practical, theoretical, subjective.* Analyze the expression carefully to make sure that the adjective is unnecessary.

For adjectives as substantives, see 3 and 4; adjectives instead of a genitive, 63 and 64; and in general, 1—10.

c. Verbs

307. The missing passive of deponent and many other verbs is supplied by a phrase: *to be admired*=**esse admirationi**, *to be hated*=**odio esse**, etc. (cf. 99).

(For the perfect active participle, see 243-244.)

308. English auxiliary verbs may often be omitted in Latin. *He needed to fear no penalty*=**non metuit poenam.** *He knew how to protect his position*=**dignitatem tuebatur.** But if the auxiliaries are in any way emphasized it is better to render them by their corresponding Latin equivalents: **possum, volo, necesse est,** etc.

309. The English passive is much more used than is the Latin passive. Hence the passive in English is often to be rendered in Latin by an active (changing the subject), by an impersonal expression, etc. *Dumnorix is summoned to his presence* may thus be translated, **Dumnorigem ad se vocat.**

310. Avoidance of **et** in Latin. Latin prefers subordination, English coördination. Hence the excessive use of *and* in English is not to be duplicated by a like use of **et** in Latin. Avoid this by using a relative clause, participle, ablative absolute, etc. *He left his horse and hastened to the camp* is **equo relicto ad castra contendit.**

PART II

EXERCISES

BASED ON

Caesar, Gallic War

BOOK III

For the Latin text, see pages 70 ff.

In the text of the exercises superior letters refer to the foot-notes; superior figures, to the sections in Notes on Idiom. A superior letter or figure put after a word applies to that word only; preceding a word, applies to two or more words following.

In the foot-notes of the exercises references to sections (e. g. § 108) apply to the Notes on Idiom. Ex. 1, b = exercise 1, foot-note b. A reference like "Text 3. 4," occurring under an exercise based, for instance, on the third book of the Gallic War, applies to chapter and section of that book. If a different book is referred to, it is designated by abbreviations easily understood; as, Text *B. G.* 4. 7. 3 = Caesar's *Bellum Gallicum*, book 4, chap. 7, § 3. No reference is made to any portion of text not printed in this book.

CHAPTERS 1–2

1. When Caesar [a]had finished his second campaign in Gaul and[b] was on the point of starting for Italy, he ordered Galba [193]to go with one legion to the Nantuates and the neighboring peoples, and to try [193]to open a route through the Alps by which men and supplies [c]might be sent [137]to Gaul from Italy without danger. Galba[d] fought

[a] Use abl. abs., **exacta aestate.** *Campaign* = **aestas,** as the season when war is carried on; or **bellum,** of the war itself. [b] Too frequent use of et may be avoided by means of a pf. pass. ptc., an abl. abs., or a clause with **cum, postquam,** etc. (§ 310). [c] This expresses Caesar's purpose in having a route opened (§ 188; also cf. § 171). [d] **Ille** (§ 304).

several successful engagements, and[b] established his cohorts [113]in villages of the enemy[c] for the purpose of wintering there[f]. But [128]within a few[g] days the Gauls determined for several reasons [193]to renew the war, because they believed [221]that [h]by seizing the heights in the night [224]they could easily crush the Romans.

[c] The plural is usual. [f] Omit. [g] **Pauci.** [h] Use abl. abs.

CHAPTERS 3–4

2. [203]After Galba had defeated the Gauls [a]in several engagements, he received hostages from them and [b]made peace. Thinking[c] that there was no reason to fear further[d] hostilities, he had not[e] quite completed his fortifications nor laid in a sufficient stock of provisions. Consequently[i], when the Roman soldiers saw [221]that the higher ground[g] was[224] all occupied by armed men, and that the roads were blocked, many of them almost despaired[h] of escape. The majority[i], however, decided [193]to fortify the camp and to [j]see what turn events would take. Soon the enemy rushed down upon them from all directions, and fought so bravely [196]that they almost captured[168] the camp.

[a] Instrumental (§ 108), not local. [b] Ex. 1. b. [c] Use a causal clause (§ 186). [d] Render by **iam** (**iam non** or **non iam** = *no longer*). [e] *Not . . . nor*, **neque . . . neque.** [f] = *and so* (§ 273). [g] Neuter pl.; **loci** = *passages* of books. [h] Caesar uses **despero** as a transitive vb. only in the abl. abs. with the pf. ptc. With the active he generally (dat. twice) uses **de** and the abl. [i] Two words in Latin. [j] Text 3. 4.

CHAPTERS 5–6

3. [204]While our men were fresh[a], they hastened [b]to aid those parts of the camp which were being stripped of defenders [101]; but when [c]the conflict had been raging for several hours [128], both strength and weapons failed them, and[d], owing to their small numbers, they were brought into desperate straits. Galba, consequently, determined to make a sally, and ordered his men to cease fighting a

[a] = *of fresh strength* (§ 117). [b] Text 4. 2. [c] = *it was being fought*. For tense, see § 159. [d] Ex. 1. b.

little while and rest themselves. [e] When the signal was given, they burst forth from camp so quickly [196] that they easily surrounded and [d] either [f] killed or routed all [72] of the Gauls who had come [g] to that place. On the next day, with no enemy to delay his march, Galba [h] set out for the province.

[e] Use abl. abs. [f] *Either . . . or*, **aut . . . aut** (§ 272). [g] Text 3. 3. [h] Text 1. 1.

CHAPTERS 7–8

4. [203] When Caesar heard [221] that Galba [224] had routed [a] the enemy in the Alps, he believed that there were no longer [b] any [c] tribes of Gaul which [225] would try [171] to [d] renew hostilities with the Romans. And so at the beginning of winter he went to Illyricum [188] to acquaint [168] himself with the country and people. But [e] shortly afterwards war broke out in several states of Gaul. The Veneti began the trouble [f] [125] by holding two Roman ambassadors who had come to ask for supplies. [g] By this proceeding they thought that they could compel [h] Crassus, Caesar's lieutenant, [193] to return their hostages. For the same reason ambassadors were held by the adjoining states too, and soon all the peoples on the seaboard had sworn through their leading men not [227] to remain in subjection to the Romans.

[a] Text 6. 3. [b] Ex. 2. d. [c] **Ullus.** [d] Text 2. 2. [e] **Paulo post.** [f] = *thing* (§ 299, N.). [g] = *thus*. [h] **Cogo.**

CHAPTERS 9–10

5. [203] As soon as Caesar, who had gone to Illyricum, had been informed by Crassus of this revolt of the maritime states, he gave orders that war-ships should be built and everything which [231] was needed for their equipment provided [a] as soon as possible. He determined [a] to carry the war first into Venetia, [185] because [b] that was the most influential state of this region, and he believed that, [c] if the rebellion here should not be allowed to pass unnoticed, the re-

[a] = *to make war upon*, text *B. G.* 4. 7. 3. [b] Text 8. 1. [c] Render this clause by abl. abs.

maining states could[224] be easily pacified[d]. [e]At the same time, [188]that other states might not[188] [f]join the conspiracy, he hastened to send troops into all parts of Gaul.

[d]Text 7. 1. [e]*At the same time*, one word. [f]*Join the conspiracy*, one word. For sequence, see § 168.

CHAPTERS 11–12

6. Titus Labienus, whom Caesar sent to the Treveri, was ordered[a] to hold the Belgians in allegiance and to prevent the Germans [194]from crossing the Rhine. Publius Crassus [b]was put in command of the troops which were sent to Aquitania. Decimus Brutus with the fleet and Caesar himself with the land forces started [203]as soon as they could for the country of the Veneti. The towns of this people were for the most part situated on the ends of promontories, [196]so that approach to them, [c]either on foot or with ships, [d]was rendered difficult by the tide. Owing to their advantageous locations, they easily defended themselves during most of the summer.

[a]Use **iubeo**. [b]*Was put in command of*, one word. [c]*Either . . . or*, **vel . . . vel** (§ 272). [d]*Was rendered difficult*, one word.

CHAPTER 13

7. The Veneti had a [a]large number of ships, and in both the [b]theoretical and the practical knowledge of nautical affairs they far surpassed their neighbors. Their vessels were built of great strength, [188]to enable them to withstand the many dangers of navigation in these waters[c]. The keels were [s]rather flat, [189]that they might more easily float in the shallow water at ebb-tide. Skins were thinly prepared [d]to serve as sails, and, being[e] stronger[f] than linen, they were better adapted [g]to withstand the fury of the ocean tempests. [106]In speed alone our fleet [h]was superior.

[a]Text 12. 2. [b]Text 8. 1 (§ 106). [c]=*places*. [d]=*for sails*. [e]Ex. 2. c. [f]**Fortis**. [g]**Ad** and the gerundive. [h]One word.

CHAPTERS 14–15

8. [218] Although Caesar [a] captured several towns of the enemy by assault, he could not prevent [b] the townspeople [c] [194] from escaping by means of their ships [206] so long as his own fleet was not [d] at hand [99] to help him. Consequently [e] he gave orders for his ships to assemble [8] as soon as possible. With these a large fleet of the Veneti hastened to engage [f], [186] since they [19] thought that the enemy would [g] at once seek safety in flight. But the Romans, who surpassed the barbarians [106] in valor, fought all the more bravely [185] because the contest was taking place under the eye of Caesar himself; and, although the fighting continued from about [134] ten o'clock until sunset, they were finally [h] victorious.

[a] *Captured by assault*, one word. [b] Use **prohibeo.** [c] Use **is.** [d] **Adsum.** [e] Ex. **2.** f. [f] **Congredior.** [g] **Statim.** [h] **Denique.**

CHAPTERS 16–17

9. [a] After this battle the Veneti were unable [b] to continue the war, [185] because they had brought together all their men and all the ships they had in the world, [c] and now that these had been defeated, they had no [162] means of defending themselves and their towns against the Romans. [203] When they had surrendered, Caesar put the senators to death, and [d] the rest of the people he sold into slavery; for he wished all the Gauls [193] to understand that they [260] must observe the rights [e] of ambassadors. [204] During these occurrences among the Veneti, Sabinus, who had been sent out by Caesar, arrived in the country of the Venelli; but [218] although Viridovix, the commander of the Gauls, offered battle every day, he had been unwilling to fight [208] until a [f] favorable occasion should be given.

[a] Text 6. 4. [b] = *to wage war longer* (**diutius**). [c] Connect by a rel. pron. and use abl. abs. [d] Ex. 1. b. [e] Singular in Latin. [f] *Favorable occasion*, one word.

CHAPTERS 18–19

10. [131] After a few days Sabinus persuaded one [71] of the Gauls whom he had with him [190] to go over to the camp of Viridovix [a] in

[a] Pro.

the character of a deserter and tell him that [128]on the next night the Roman army [224]was going away to aid Caesar. [203]Upon hearing this the Gauls urged their officers [190]to lead them[27] out against the enemy at once. [188]In order to give the Romans [8]as little time as possible for equipping themselves, they set off at full speed. [b]The result was [198]that they arrived all out of breath and exhausted[c]; and so, when the Romans suddenly [d]burst forth from two gates [e]at once, they were not able to withstand even[f] a single attack. [g]Most of them were killed in the rout, and[h] their states at once surrendered.

[b] = *from which it happened.* [c]Easily inferred from the noun in the text. [d] = *made a sally.* [e] = *at the same time;* text 9. 3. [f] *Not even* = **ne . . . quidem**, which enclose the limited word or words. [g]**Plerique.** [h]Ex. 1. b.

CHAPTERS 20–21

11. At about the same time, Publius Crassus, who had been ordered to go [137]to Aquitania with a force of infantry and cavalry [188]in order that [a]aid might not be sent from [b]that powerful nation to the Veneti, came to an engagement with the enemy. [131]A few years before, the Aquitanians had routed a Roman army, and[c] slain the commander; and so at this time, confident because of their former victory[111], they thought that they could[224] easily[d] defeat [68]the young Crassus. The battle was long and fierce, but at last, exhausted from their wounds, the enemy turned in flight. Their town was then attacked, and[c], [218]although they resisted bravely, they soon[e] begged Crassus[55] [190]to accept [f]their surrender, and gave up their arms.

[a]Text 11. 3. [b]**Tantus.** [c]Ex. 1. b. [d]Text 13. 6. [e]**Brevi tempore.** [f] = *them into surrender.*

CHAPTERS 22–23

12. In that town of the Aquitanians, which Crassus had captured, [a]as has been said, [128]within a few days after his arrival thither, there was a band[b] of six hundred men who had devoted

[a]Text 20. 1. [b]Text 11. 4.

themselves to the friendship of a certain Adiatunnus, taking oath [227]that, [229]if any[38] [c]harm should come to him, they would all bear the same fortune together or would put themselves to death. [d]On the other hand, he[19] promised [227]that they should enjoy with him[27] all the good things in life. These men tried to force a way out [137]from the town, but were repulsed, and[e] straightway surrendered. Crassus then [f]made war upon other tribes of Aquitania, which had called in soldiers and officers from Spain to carry on the war with them.

[c] **Accidit,** *it happens*, often implies misfortune; **contingit**, on the other hand, is used of fortunate events. [d] **Contra.** [e] By use of a ptc. *and* may be omitted (§ **310**). [f] **Ex. 5. a.**

CHAPTERS 24–26

13. [186]Since the Spanish[a] officers [b]had been associated [128]for several years with [68]the skilful[c] general Sertorius, they possessed an [b]excellent knowledge of military science; and so, [186]as the number of the enemy was [d]increasing every day, Crassus thought that he[95] [260]ought to [e]come to an engagement [8]as soon as possible. At daybreak he led out all his forces, and[f] waited to see [220]what plan[70] the enemy would adopt; but they remained in camp, for they thought that they could win a victory[115] more easily [g]by blockading the roads and cutting off supplies. Crassus saw through this plan, and[f] hastened to attack a part of the camp which he had learned was[224] not carefully fortified. The enemy, surrounded on all sides, sought safety in flight, but barely a fourth part [h]of their great number escaped.

[a] **Hispanus.** [b] **Text 23. 5.** [c] **Text 21. 3.** [d] **Text 23. 7.** [e] **Text 20. 3.** [f] **Ex. 1. b.** [g] **Use abl. abs.** [h] = *from so great a multitude.*

CHAPTERS 27–29

14. [218]Although winter [a]was now near at hand, Caesar determined to lead a force [b]against the Morini and Menapii, for they were now

[a] *Was near at hand*, one word. [b] **In** with acc.

the only peoples of all Gaul [184]which had neglected to send envoys to him about peace. [c]Upon his arrival they [d]withdrew with all their possessions into the woods and swamps, [185]because they were afraid [195]that, [231]if they [225]should meet[e] him [110]in battle, the war would be speedily brought to an end. Caesar, however, ordered his men [f] to cut down the woods, and [128]within a few days such a great space had been cleared [196]that the Romans could capture[g] part of the baggage of the enemy. But the work [260]had to be given up, owing to long-continued rains, and Caesar led his army away into winter-quarters.

[c]Text 23. 4. [d]*Withdrew with = betook themselves and.* [e]*= contend with.* [f]Omit. [g]Text 24. 3 (§ 115).

Caesar, Gallic War

BOOK IV

CHAPTERS 1–2

15. The Suevi, who forced[a] the Usipetes and Tencteri to cross the Rhine, are the [7]most warlike of the German tribes[b]. [185]Since they live chiefly [108]on the milk and flesh of their flocks, they are [c]large and strong. They are [d]capable of great endurance also, for[274] they allow no wine nor other things which weaken human strength to be brought [e]into their country. [f]In fact, traders visit them rather [188]to buy[g] what they have captured in war than to sell them anything. Their horses, though small, are [196]so well trained that in time of battle they remain [h]quiet where they are left.

Note how the important words come early in the sentence—e. g., in chap. 2: **mercatoribus, iumentis, vinum.** See § 287.

[a]Use **cogo** with infin. (§ 193). [b]Note Caesar's expression. [c]Text 1. 9. and see § 117. [d]Text 2. 2, and see § 65. [e]Omit *into their country.* The verb is enough. [f]Use **vero** (§ 270.) [g]**Emo.** [h]Note Caesar's expression.

CHAPTERS 3–4

16. [a]On almost every side the country about the Suevi is uninhabited, for[274] they have driven out all the tribes [b]except the Ubii. The Usipetes and Tencteri, who [c]held their ground against the Suevi [128]for many years, were at last driven [137]from their territories, and arrived [137]at the Rhine in [d]55 B.C. Frightened at their approach, the Menapii, who had lived on both banks, crossed the river and [e]removed all their boats. By this means and by stationing pickets along the shore they prevented the Ubii [194]from crossing. But the Ubii, pretending to return to their own country, marched back [f]by night, and [g]by an unexpected attack crushed the Menapii, who had recrossed the river.

[a]**Omnes fere agri.** [b]Abl. abs.: **Ubiis exceptis.** [c]*Held their ground* = **vim sustinuerunt,** etc. See text. [d]See text 1. 1, and read § 132. [e]Ex. 1. b. [f]**Noctu.** [g]*By an unexpected attack,* etc., note the Latin expression, text 4. 5.

CHAPTERS 5–7

17. [203]When Caesar learned [221]that the Germans had crossed the Rhine, he thought [221]that he[95] ought not to trust the Gauls[89], for he feared their [a]fickle character. They are in the habit of stopping travellers even against their will and questioning them, and they often [b]follow the lead of the vaguest rumors[87]. As Caesar suspected, they had already invited the Germans to leave the Rhine [205]when he reached his army. [204]While he was on the march, German envoys came to him [c]to ask [220]why [d]he had determined to make war upon them. [211]"If," said they, "the Romans give us lands, we can be useful friends, but we do not [e]refuse [200]to fight, for we yield only to the Suevi[87], for whom[92] not even the gods are a match."

[a]One word. [b]*Follow the lead of,* one word. [c]Use a relative clause of purpose (§ 188). [d]*Why* = **cur, qua re,** etc. [e]Text 7. 3.

CHAPTERS 8–10

18. [203]When the German envoys asked[a] Caesar[56] to allow[b] them [193]to settle in Gaul, he refused, but told them [221]that they might go

[a]Use **peto** (§ 190). [b]**Patior.**

among the Ubii, who were unable alone[c] to defend their country from the Suevi. The envoys promised[d] to return in three days and give their reply. Caesar was aware [221] that they desired delay because most of their cavalry had gone on a plundering expedition across the river Meuse. [c]This is a stream which rises in the Vosges mountains and enters the Rhine about [116]eighty miles from the sea. The Rhine itself rises in the country of the Helvetii, and, after flowing through the countries of many peoples, empties into the sea by many mouths.

[c]**Solus.** [d]**Polliceor,** cf. § **227.** [e] *This is a stream which = which stream.*

CHAPTERS 11–12

19. The German envoys earnestly [55]asked Caesar for a truce [a]that they might have an opportunity to send ambassadors to the Ubii. For they said that they would [b]avail themselves of Caesar's offer [115] in case the Ubii would ratify[c] it for them. Caesar promised not to advance more than four miles [105, 218] although he saw [221] that they were delaying [185] because their cavalry had not returned. He likewise sent orders to his cavalry not to fight until he himself came up. But the Germans, [d]in spite of the truce, made so fierce an attack on Caesar's cavalry [196] that they drove them back in confusion [e]with a loss of seventy-four men.

Note the long period at the beginning of chap. 12. See § **296.**

[a]Read § **221** foot-note. [b] *Avail themselves of = use.* [c]Text 11. 3.
[d] *In spite of* = **contra.** [e] *With a loss,* etc., use abl. abs.

CHAPTERS 13–14

20. [203]After the Germans had attacked our cavalry so treacherously it seemed folly [69] to [a]pay any further attention to their offers. Caesar thought he [95] ought to attack their camp [b]at once before[c] their cavalry could return. Early the next morning all the chief

[a] *Pay any further attention,* etc. = *listen to them longer.* Cf. § **235.**
[b]Ex. 8. g. [c]**Priusquam,** cf. §§ **209** and **210.**

men of the Germans came to him to excuse the attack of the previous day. But Caesar arrested them and[d] advanced rapidly against the German camp. His men burst into the camp before[c] the Germans, confused by their sudden attack, could [e]make up their minds [220]whether it was better to sally forth against them or defend the camp.

[d] **Ex. 1. b.** [e] *Make up their minds = decide.*

CHAPTERS 15–16

21. [218]Notwithstanding the fact that he had defeated the Germans with heavy loss and[a] captured their camp, it seemed expedient[b] to Caesar to follow the fugitives[c] across the Rhine. He was brought to this decision by several considerations[d]. In the first[e] place, the Sugambri had refused to surrender to him the fugitives who had found refuge with them, saying that the Romans had no power across the Rhine. Then[e] the Ubii were earnestly asking his aid. [185]because, as they said, the Suevi were constantly attacking them. Finally,[e] he wished to inspire the Germans with fear for[97] their own country and thus to [f]prevent them from crossing into Gaul.

[a] Ex. 12. e. Cf. § 127. [b] *Seemed expedient to* C. = C. *decided.* [c] *Fugitives = those who had fled,* cf. § 302. [d] Note the simplicity of the Latin, text 16. 1. Cf. also § 296. [e] *First, secondly, thirdly,* etc., may be rendered by **primum, deinde, tum, postremo** or **ad extremum.** [f] See text 4. 3.

CHAPTER 17

22. [188]In order to [a]inspire the Germans with fear for their own country and respect for the Romans, who, they thought, would not dare[224] to cross the Rhine, Caesar decided to build a bridge. The structure rested[b] on piles driven obliquely into the bed of the river in such a way [196]that they supported easily the great strength of the current. [c]It was feared that the Germans might send down trunks

[a] = *in order that the Germans might fear . . . and respect* (**vereor**), etc. See text 16. 1. [b] *Rested = was supported by.* [c] *It was feared = they feared* (§ 309).

of trees against the bridge, [d]and in order to prevent these from injuring it, other piles were driven a short distance[116] above. In this way a bridge fourteen hundred feet long[66] and forty feet wide[66] was completed[128] within ten days.

[d] = *which that they might*, etc.

CHAPTERS 18–19

23. Having completed the bridge in a few days, Caesar led his army across into Germany. The Germans, dismayed at his approach, sent envoys [a]from all sides to ask for peace. The Sugambri, however, with whom the fugitive Germans had found refuge, had made ready for flight from the time when the bridge[152] began to be built, and now[b] were safely hidden in the forests. The Suevi, as Caesar was informed by the Ubii, into whose territory he had marched, had assembled in one spot in order to fight it out with the Romans. But Caesar[304], having now accomplished all the objects for which he had crossed into Germany, decided to withdraw into Gaul.

[a] *From all sides* = **undique.** [b] *Now*, not **nunc**, which is used of time actually present.

CHAPTERS 20–21

24. Caesar decided to invade Britain[210] before winter should come on, in order to prevent[a] the Britons[194] from assisting the Gauls. He thought it would be of advantage[99] also[b] to learn[220] how large the island was and what tribes inhabited it, for[274] it was almost wholly unknown. [c]Being unable to gain any information from the traders, he sent Volusenus ahead with one ship [d]on a reconnoitering expedition. Meanwhile, [e]since little of the summer remained, he ordered his fleet to assemble as soon as possible on the coast of the Morini, opposite Britain. This was in the autumn[f] of the year 55 B.C.

[a] Text 4. 3. [b] **Quoque**, cf. § 266. [c] Ex. 2. c. [d] **Ad explorandum.** [e] Abl. abs., cf. § 126. [f] **Autumnus.**

CHAPTERS 22–23

25. [204]While Volusenus was reconnoitering the shores of Britain, Caesar made ready his ships, and [203]as soon as Volusenus arrived he hastened to embark[a] upon them two legions together with cavalry. Setting sail about midnight[b] with a favorable breeze, he reached Britain about nine[134] o'clock the next morning. But the shores were so steep and the enemy so numerous that he did not at first venture to land. [c]After waiting several hours [208]until his cavalry should come up, he set sail at length to a more favorable landing[d] about [136]seven miles distant. Even[267] then he did not[267] at first allow his men to disembark, because the cavalry had not yet arrived.

[a] *Embark* = **imponere in naves** (§ 143). [b] = *middle of* (§ 10) *the night*. [c] Render by a clause with **cum**. [d] Note Caesar's expression.

CHAPTERS 24–25

26. When the Romans reached Britain, the natives, occupying the shore, prevented them from disembarking. For [a]while the Romans [b]had to fight standing in the waves, the barbarians were able to hurl their javelins from dry land. [203]As soon as Caesar noticed the dismay of his men at the difficulties of landing, he ordered some of his galleys to row [c]to a position on the flank of the enemy [182]whence they could worry[d] them by arrows and missiles. This caused them to retreat slightly, but even then the Romans [e]might not have landed had not the standard-bearer[302] of the tenth legion boldly leaped from his ship and led the way towards the shore.

[a] *While*, not **dum**. [b] = *had to fight while they stand*, cf. § 204. [c] *To a position*, omit. [d] *Worry* = **perturbo** (text 14. 2), or **lacesso** (text 11. 6). [e] = *perhaps* (**fortasse**) *would not*, etc. (§ 215).

CHAPTERS 26–27

27. As soon as the eagle-bearer leaped into the waves, the soldiers followed, and a fierce conflict ensued. The barbarians, outnumber-

ing the Romans, [157] would attack them one by one, and thus the Romans [a] were at a great disadvantage. When, however, the Romans had obtained firm footing, they speedily put the enemy to flight. After the battle envoys came to Caesar to seek peace and to bring to him Commius, who had been sent to them as an ambassador, but [b] had been thrown into chains. Although they had attacked him without provocation, Caesar decided to pardon them and ordered them [c] to furnish hostages.

[a] *Were at a great disadvantage* = *this was for a great disadvantage to the Romans* (§ 99). [b] Ex. 12. e. [c] *To furnish*, omit.

CHAPTERS 28–29

28. Though Caesar reached Britain safely with his infantry and defeated the enemy, yet he was unable to pursue them, because his cavalry had been [a] too [5] slow in starting. When [b] at last they approached the island, they were prevented from landing by a violent storm which drove some back to the continent and others to the westward coast of the island. On the same night many of Caesar's ships were wrecked by the storm and the high tide which occurs at the time of full moon. The Romans were greatly dismayed at these misfortunes [c], for they had nothing with which to repair the ships, and not enough provisions [70] to winter in Britain.

[a] *Too slow*, etc., see text 23. 2. [b] *At last* = **tandem**. [c] **Res** (cf. § 299, note).

CHAPTERS 30–31

29. [203] As soon as the Britons discovered that Caesar's ships had been wrecked, they conspired [188] to destroy [a] the Romans, [125] though peace had been made. They thought that they could do this [b] by cutting them off from provisions and prolonging matters until winter. And so they ceased to send in hostages. This caused Caesar [197] to suspect their plans and make ready to meet them. His sol-

[a] **Opprimo**. [b] *By cutting*, etc., express by a condition, cf. § 229.

diers were busy[c] gathering corn into the camp and repairing the ships by means of the tackle of those ships which had been wholly ruined. The soldiers worked so eagerly that they soon[d] made most of the ships suitable for sailing.

[c] Omit. Render the idea by the imperfect (§ 160). [d] Not **mox**, which is used, as a rule, with future tenses.

CHAPTERS 32–34

30. While the seventh legion was engaged in foraging not far from the camp, it was treacherously[a] attacked by the barbarians, who [215] would have destroyed it entirely had not Caesar come to its assistance with the cohorts which [b] happened to be on guard. When Caesar came up he found the legion in disorder and surrounded by [c] clouds of cavalry and war-chariots. They drive these chariots among the ranks of the enemy in order to throw them into confusion, and then, descending[d], fight on foot. The soldiers were so much in disorder that Caesar perceived it [221] was not a good opportunity for battle, and gradually[e] withdrew his forces to the camp.

[a] Text 13. 1. [b] = *by chance* (**forte**) *were*. [c] Do not render literally. [d] Render by a clause. [e] Text 30. 3.

CHAPTERS 34–36

31. Encouraged by their attack [123] on the seventh legion, the Britons determined to assault the camp, hoping[a] that they would free Britain forever, [229] if they could crush the few Romans who had come with Caesar. But although they assembled from all sides [b] in large numbers, the Romans easily routed them. [c] As usual they sent envoys immediately to secure peace. After they had promised to send hostages, Caesar thought that he ought not to delay longer in Britain, because the winter was coming on and he feared to trust his unseaworthy ships to the storms of autumn.

[a] Render by a clause. [b] Render by an adjective. [c] *As usual* = **ex consuetudine.**

CHAPTERS 37–38

32. The Morini, to whose coast Caesar returned from Britain, [a]acted with great treachery; for, when two transports were unable to land with the others, [b]but were driven several miles by the wind, they surrounded the soldiers, as soon as they had disembarked, and commanded them to surrender on pain of death. But they resisted the attack of the enemy for several[c] hours [207]until the cavalry came to their assistance. Labienus then marched against them and [d]took speedy vengeance. The Menapii, too[266], who had [e]neglected to send envoys to him before[209] he set sail for Britain, were humbled[f] by two of his lieutenants. Their territories were laid waste and their buildings burned.

[a] *Acted with* = *used*, cf. § **115**. [b] Use a participle. [c] *Several* = **plures**. [d] Use **ulciscor** (text 19. 4). [e] Text 22. 5. [f] Text 3. 4.

Nepos, Alcibiades

For the Latin text, see pages **151** ff. For abbreviations, see page 70.

CHAPTERS 1–2

33. Alcibiades was the most remarkable of the Athenians, both as regards virtues[106] and faults[106]. He was a man [a]of great beauty and eloquence, and was very wealthy [b]as well. And yet[270] he was [31]at the same time [a]given to luxury and [a]lacked self-control, [196]so that he seemed[168] to be a man [c]of strangely diverse character. He [309]was intrusted by Pericles, whose step-son he was, to Socrates [188]to be educated. And Socrates was thought[d] to be the wisest of men. [e]In fact, nature seemed to be trying in his case [f]how many blessings she could[168] confer[g].

Note how the adjectives of chapter 1 may be represented by phrases in English.

[a] Use adjectives, cf. text. [b] *As well* = *also*, cf. § **266**. [c] = *of character*, *strange* (**mirabilis**) *and diverse*. [d] Text 3. 4. [e] Use **vero**, § **270**. [f] *How many* = **quot**. See § **220**. [g] = *give*.

CHAPTER 3

34. [204] While the Peloponnesian war [a] was going on, Alcibiades persuaded the Athenians [87] [190] to declare [168] war on the Syracusans [91] and to elect him [54] general [54] with two colleagues. The expedition was ready [257] to sail [b] [205] when all [72] but one of the small busts of Hermes which were in the city [140] of Athens [62] were thrown down in a single night [128]. [186] Since this could not have happened without the connivance of many people, there were persons [182] who believed [168] [221] that [c] some one was [d] conspiring against the state. They suspected Alcibiades, because no one was equal to him [92] in influence [106], and because he celebrated mystic rites in his own house. For this is considered impious by the Athenians [108].

[a] *Was going on*, use passive of **gero.** [b] **Navigo.** [c] Read **221** and foot-note. [d] *Conspire against* = **coniuro contra.**

CHAPTER 4

35. [204] When the enemies of Alcibiades [165] were about to accuse him of sacrilege [a], he wished the trial to take place [b] while he was present. But they decided to wait [208] until he had set sail, [188] so that they might injure [168] him [87] in his absence. And so, [203] after he had reached Sicily, a messenger came to him from Athens [c] with directions that he [d] must return [257] to plead his case. But he fled to Thurii, in Italy. [203] When the Athenians learned this they condemned him to death [82] and forced the Eumolpid priests to pronounce a curse upon him. He then fled to Sparta, and persuaded the Spartans [87] [190] to make an alliance with the Persian king and to fortify Decelea in Attica.

Observe in this chapter the variety in the constructions of place, cf. §§ **137, 138, 141.**

[a] Note that Nepos expresses this by a causal clause, cf. § **185.** [b] Condense. See text 4. 1. [c] *With directions that*, omit. This is rendered by the indirect discourse. [d] *Must return* = *must be returned by him*, cf. § **260.**

CHAPTER 5

36. [218]Although Alcibiades was friendly to the Spartans[92], they feared him and planned to put him to death. But he was so keen that he discovered their purpose, and fled [147]to Tissaphernes in Asia. Meanwhile the Athenians were being defeated [144]on land and sea, and Alcibiades perceived that [a]he had a good opportunity [b]of being restored to his native land. This was brought about [109]through the agency of Thrasybulus. [267]And yet he did not at once[c] return to Athens, but was elected in his absence[54] one [71]of the generals. Immediately[c] the Athenians were everywhere[d] victorious, and Alcibiades, [125]after conquering many cities, returned with his colleagues to Athens laden with booty[113].

[a] = *there was to himself a good opportunity*, cf. § 94. [b] = *of returning*. [c] Ex. 8. g. [d] **Omnibus locis (§ 144).**

CHAPTERS 6–7

37. [203]As soon as Alcibiades reached the Piraeus all the people of Athens came down to meet him[92], [125]taking no notice of his colleagues. For they attributed to him alone all their victories, and no longer considered the loss of their army in Sicily as his fault. When they heard him speak[248] about his misfortunes they [a]could not refrain from tears. And so [b]once more he became famous, but his great reputation [c]injured him, for the Athenians believed that he could do anything, and, when he had attacked Cyme unsuccessfully, they thought that he had been bribed by the Persian[d] king. The result was [198]that his office was taken from him[98], and he fled to Thrace.

[a] *Could not refrain* = *they could not but that they wept* (**§ 200**). [b] *Once more* = **iterum.** [c] Text 7. 3 (cf. **§ 99**). [d] Text 4. 7.

CHAPTER 8

38. Although Alcibiades was now[a] an exile [b]for the second time, yet he still [153]continued to love his country. When the fleets of the

[a] Ex. **23. b.** [b] Ex. **37.** b.

Athenians and Spartans were stationed on the Hellespont[c] he [158]attempted to persuade the Athenian admiral[d] [190]to employ a plan of his[27] against the Spartans [182]by which they [168]should be forced [27½]either to fight or to seek peace. But the admiral, Philocles, refused to listen to him. "For," [274] he said [291], [211] "if I follow his advice I shall get none of the credit." He even refused to move his camp [137]from the neighborhood of Lysander. This proved the [99]ruin of the Athenians, for Lysander, waiting[e] until the Athenians were nearly all on shore, attacked their fleet and [310]ended the war.

[c] **Hellespontus.** [d] Note that the Latin employs a general term = *commander* or *officer* (§ **299**). [e] Not a participle in Latin.

CHAPTERS 9–10

39. After the defeat of the Athenians the Spartans were so powerful that Alcibiades was [a]not safe even in Thrace [137]. For [274] the Thracians [b]robbed him [98] of all his money and forced[c] him to flee to Asia [137]. There[d] Pharnabazus became so friendly to him [92 196] that he began to hope [227] he could gain the friendship of King Darius also [266]. He planned[e] to go to him and reveal the conspiracy of his [35] brother Cyrus against him. [30] At that very time the thirty tyrants, who were ruling [153] at Athens [138], sent word to Lysander to kill Alcibiades. They said that [229] unless he were put out of the way none of the arrangements of the Spartans at Athens would endure.

[a] *Not . . . even*, cf. Ex. 10. f. [b] *Robbed him of . . . money = took away for him . . . money* (§ 98). [c] Ex. 4. h. [d] **Ibi.** [e] **Consilium capio,** with gerund or gerundive (§ **253**).

CHAPTERS 10–11

40. [203] As soon as Lysander received the message of the thirty tyrants he persuaded Pharnabazus that[a] the king's power [229] would be diminished unless Alcibiades should be killed. And so the satrap[b], [125]proving false to his friendship with Alcibiades, sent a

[a] Analyze *that* carefully, cf. § **221**, foot-note. [b] **Satrap,** not necessarily a noun in Latin. Read § **303**.

band of barbarians [188] to murder him. [186] Not daring to attack him openly, they set fire to the hut in which he was sleeping, and, though he escaped the flames, slew him with missiles from a distance. His head [287] they carried to Pharnabazus.

At the time of his death Alcibiades was forty years of age. He was a man of most [c] versatile character, for he successfully imitated all peoples at their own pursuits [106]. This caused him [197] to be admired and popular among all men.

[c] *Versatile character*, cf. text 1. 4.

Nepos, Hannibal

CHAPTERS 1–2

41. Nobody will deny [221] that Hannibal, [68] the famous leader of the Carthaginians, excelled all the Roman generals who [a] carried on the war against him. Although he was in Italy fifteen years, he was never defeated by the Romans [110] in battle, and, [215] if he had not been handicapped [b] by the jealousy of his [293] countrymen at home, he would perhaps [c] have been victorious. His hatred [61] for the Romans, which he cherished throughout his long life, [d] he had, as it were, inherited from his father, Hamilcar. When he [22] was a mere lad [65] nine years old, his father [20] decided [e] to make war upon Spain, and as he was about to leave Carthage [138], he asked his son [22 220] if he would like to go with [295] him [27]. Hannibal did not hesitate [202] to accept the offer, and swore always [227] to be a foe of the Romans [229] if his father would take [f] him.

[a] = *waged war with him* (§ 226). [b] = *weakened*. [c] Fortasse.
[d] Use a passive construction with *hatred* as the subject. [e] Ex. 5. a.
[f] = *lead* (§ 171).

CHAPTERS 3–4

42. Hamilcar had gone [137] to Spain [253] for the sake of raising an army there [188] with which to make war upon the Romans in Italy.

[128]Within a few years, however, he was killed, and[a] Hasdrubal, his son-in-law[b], was made commander[54] in his place. For the next eight years Hannibal was at the head of all the cavalry[91], and became so [c]popular with the soldiers [196]that after Hasdrubal's death the chief command was conferred upon him.[d] In three years he subdued almost all the tribes of Spain, and, [244]having taken Saguntum by storm, decided to set out the next year [137]for Italy. When he had arrived there[e], he defeated the Romans twice[f] in the neighborhood of the Po, and then, crossing[g] the Apennines in the next year, entrapped and[a] destroyed a large army near Trasumenus and slew the consul.

[a] Ex. 1. b. [b] **Gener.** [c] = *beloved by.* [d] Cf. §§ **22** and **27**, end. [e] Use **quo** = *whither;* for position, cf. §§ **288** and **293**. [f] **Bis.** [g] = *having crossed* (§ **244**).

CHAPTERS 5–6

43. Hannibal afterwards marched into Apulia, and in the next year [130]at the battle [63]of Cannae he routed the armies of both[a] consuls, and killed about fifty thousand men[73]. Although the Romans feared [195]that he would immediately attack[b] the city, they did not [c]despair of their[293] fortunes[d], but [e]made all preparations [188]to oppose a strong force to him [231]if he should come. But Hannibal[304] was unwilling to lead his army [138]to Rome, for he knew that it was so strongly[f] fortified [196]that he could not take it by storm; and so at the [g]end of summer he went into winter-quarters [141]at Capua. Although Hannibal remained[h] in Italy several years and was unconquered in battle, he was [i]at last recalled to Africa, and, wonderful [262]to relate, was defeated [108]by Scipio [139]near Zama.

[a] = *each* (text 4. 4). [b] Text *B. G.* 3. 21. 2. [c] Ex. 2. h. [d] = *things* (§ **299**). [e] = *prepared* (text *B. G.* 3. 9. 3) *all things.* [f] Omit. [g] Text *B. G.* 3. 28. 1 (§ **125**). [h] Text *B. G.* 4. 1. 5. [i] **Postremo.**

CHAPTER 7

44. Although Hannibal had been defeated by Scipio [130]in the battle [63]of Zama, he nevertheless gathered [8]as large a force as possible [138]at Hadrumetum, and [215]would have engaged with the Ro-

mans [a]a second time if [b]terms of peace had not been agreed upon. [131]Shortly afterwards the Romans [c]managed to have him called home [138]; for, when ambassadors had come to Rome from Carthage [182]to thank the Roman senate [87] and people [185]for having made peace, and at the same time to request [56]of them [190]that they would restore the Carthaginians whom they held as prisoners, [d]they were told that, [229]if they wished to recover [e] their prisoners [f], Hannibal [166]must first be recalled from the army. [203]Upon his return to Carthage he was elected king [54]; for, as the Romans annually chose two consuls, so the Carthaginians chose two kings.

[a]Text 5. 3. [b]Text 6. 2. [c]= *effected that he* (§ 22) *should be called* (§ 197). [d]= *it was replied to them.* [e]Text *B. G.* 3. 8. 2. [f]Omit.

CHAPTERS 8–9

45. [186]Since the Romans were afraid [195]that, [231]if they [229]should allow Hannibal [a] [193]to remain longer [b] in Carthage, he would soon [c] persuade his [87] countrymen [d] [e]to go to war again [f], they sent ambassadors [188]to demand [190]that he [19] should be surrendered to them [27]. This undoubtedly [215]would have been done if he had not fled to Syria to King Antiochus. [131]After a few years, when the king [15] had been defeated by the Romans on land and sea, Hannibal [15], perceiving [g] that he was again in danger, went away secretly [h] to Crete. He had a great amount of money with him, and, since he feared that the Cretans would try [193]to get [115]it into their possession, he [i]made a pretence of depositing it in the temple of Diana, which was thereafter [j] carefully [121] watched by the Cretans, [188]that he might not carry off his property [125]without their knowing it.

[a]Make *Hannibal* subject of the *that* clause, substituting a pronoun (§ 22) here. [b]Text *B. G.* 3. 9. 5. [c]Ex. 11. e. [d]Omit. [e]= *to undertake* (§ 190). [f]Ex. 44. a. [g]Cf. Ex. 42. g. [h]Text 7. 6. [i]= *pretended that* (§ 221) *he was depositing.* [j]**Deinde.**

CHAPTER 10

46. [a]As a matter of fact, the Cretans were keeping guard over [b]nothing but lead; for Hannibal had filled several jars with this

[a]**Re vera.** [b]**Nihil nisi.**

metal[c], and, covering[d] the tops[107] with silver and gold, had deposited them in the temple, while[e] his money he concealed[f] at home in brazen statues which he [157]was accustomed to carry about with him. [131]A little later he went to Pontus, where he showed[g] that he was no less an enemy of Rome in Asia than in Italy. For he incited the king against the Romans, and persuaded many[87] of the neighboring nations [h]to come to his assistance. Eumenes [64]of Pergamon, however, being a warm friend of the Romans, began[i] to wage war with the other kings both by land and by sea. He especially desired to capture Hannibal and to hand him over to the Romans.

[c]Omit. [d]Cf. Ex. 42. g. [e]Autem (§ 270). [f]Text *B. G.* 4. 18. 4. [g]Text *B. G.* 4. 11. 3. [h]=*that they should be* (§ 190) *for an aid to him* (§ 99). [i]Text 2. 4. [j]Trado (§ 193).

CHAPTER 11

47. When Hannibal saw that owing to the alliance of the Romans Eumenes could not be crushed [a]by force of arms, he [b]adopted the following[16] plan. [244]Having filled a great number of earthen vessels [112]with poisonous serpents, he ordered[8] as many as possible to be put on board each[41] ship[143], in order that his men might defend themselves with these [231]if they [229]should be hard pressed [108]by the enemy. [203]As soon as the battle began, the Bithynians, in accordance with Hannibal's orders, [c]all together directed their attack upon the king's ship, and [215]would soon[d] have captured it if it had not fled for safety. But the other ships of the royal fleet [160]were getting the better of their[33] opponents [207]until [e]at last the earthen vessels began[152] to be hurled upon them. Then, terrified [108]by the serpents, the king's forces retreated to their naval camp.

[a]*By force of arms*, one word. [b]Text 9. 3. [c]*All together*, one word. [d]Ex. 11. e. [e]Ex. 43. i.

CHAPTERS 12–13

48. [a]Not long after this it was reported to the senate [b]at Rome that Hannibal was living in Bithynia, and since nobody doubted

[a]Non ita multo (§ 116) post. [b]Express by an adj. (cf. § 64).

[201]that the state would always be in danger [125]so long as he lived, ambassadors were sent [188]to request Prusias [55] [190]to surrender him [19] to them [27] at once. Prusias [304] [c]replied that he would not do what was [225] contrary to the rights of hospitality, but that they [d]might arrest him if they could find him. Accordingly they hastened [e] to the strong castle in which they had heard that he was living at that time, and hoped [227] to seize all the avenues of escape [210] before he should know that they were looking for him. But he [f]was at once informed by a faithful slave that the house had been surrounded by armed men; and so, since he feared [195] that, [231] if they caught him, they would put him to death, he did not hesitate [g] to end his own life with poison.

[c] = *denied that he would do.* [d] **Licet** (§ 193) may be used, or, assuming that the direct discourse contained an impv., *Arrest him if you can find him*, the subjv. (§ 222). [e] Text *B. G.* 3. 19. 1. [f] *Was informed*, express by a ptc. (§ 310). [g] **Mihi mortem conscisco** (§ 202).

Cicero, Manilian Law

For the Latin text, see pages 164 ff.
For abbreviations, see page 70.
In the exercises based on Cicero, all references to the Latin text (as "text 23") apply to sections, not to chapters.

CHAPTER 1

49. [218] Although Cicero was [128] forty years old [205] when he defended the cause of Pompey, he had not before attained to [a]the dignity of speaking from the Rostra [b]. He had, however, for fifteen years [c] devoted himself so uprightly and faithfully to private suits that he was elected [d] praetor. [e] From this time he thought [221] that he ought to employ his influence [115] and power of speaking among those who [225] had given him so distinguished an honor. He said that he was

[a] = *such* (**is**, § 23) *dignity that he spoke* (§ 196). [b] Neuter pl. [c] **Versor in** with abl. [d] **Creo** (§ 54). [e] **Inde.**

especially glad because he was to speak about the unparalleled merit of Gnaeus Pompey; for in such a cause language could not fail any man.

CHAPTER 2

50. Two powerful monarchs, Mithridates and Tigranes, thinking[186] that an opportunity was offered them of getting possession of Asia, were making war upon tributaries and allies of the Romans. This war was [a]particularly oppressive to [b]members of the equestrian order, many of whom had large properties invested in managing the taxes there. But the largest and surest revenues of the Roman people, [c]without which Cicero declares there would be neither the means of supporting war nor the requisites of peace, were also at stake, so that all the citizens were fired with enthusiasm [d]for prosecuting the war. As[e] commander for this war all men, both citizens and allies, desired Gnaeus Pompey.

[a] Express by superlative. [b] One word. [c] = *which having been lost.* [d] Genitive. [e] Omit.

CHAPTERS 3–4

51. Cicero said in his [a]speech for[b] Pompey that [c]it was a deep stain on the name of the Roman people because Mithridates, who [131]twenty-two years before on a single day and by a single message had ordered so many citizens of Rome to be massacred, [225]had as yet suffered no punishment worthy of his crime[111]. [218]Although two brave commanders had celebrated triumphs at Rome [d]for victories over him, he still [e]remained on his throne, and, more[f] covetous of glory than all other kings, he [159]had long been building fleets and collecting powerful armies for the purpose of contesting the supremacy[g] with the Romans by land and sea. He even sent envoys to Spain, where Sertorius [h]was conducting a vigorous campaign against Rome.

[a] = *speech delivered* (**habita**) *for Pompey.* [b] **Pro** (§ 263). [c] = *a stain was deeply seated.* [d] = *concerning him.* [e] *Remained on his throne*, one word. [f] *More than* = *beyond.* [g] = *about the supremacy.* [h] = *was waging war vigorously* (text *B. G.* 3. 21. 1) *with the Romans* (§ 300).

CHAPTER 5

52. Your ancestors, fellow-citizens, [128]eighty years ago[129], [203]when they heard that their ambassadors had been wrongfully treated [138]at Corinth, wished that great and noble city [a]to be utterly destroyed. [b]What, then, ought your feelings to be [205]when you remember that you are allowing that proud king to go unpunished who has tortured[c] and [225]put to death at one time so many thousands of your fellow-citizens? Moreover, the safety of your allies and friends is imperiled[d] by this same king, who, [218]although he has [e]several times been defeated by your generals, is threatening all Asia[87]. The only man [184]who is able to check his attacks is, they believe, Gnaeus Pompey. To him, therefore, they ask you at once [190]to intrust their welfare.

[a]One word. [b]= *of what mind* (§ 117) *ought you to be.* [c]Use ptc. agreeing with the obj. (cf. § 310). [d]= *called into danger.* [e]Aliquotiens.

CHAPTER 6

53. [203]After the Romans had conquered Philip in Greece, they sent an army into Asia [188]to check Antiochus. [131]Forty years afterwards they carried on war for three years with the Carthaginians in Africa. All [72]of these wars they undertook[a] for the sake of allies, although they had not themselves been provoked by any wrongs. It was fitting, therefore, [237]that Cicero should ask his fellow-citizens [220]with what feelings[121] they could[171] allow Mithridates [193]to be unpunished, [186]since he[72] had not only [b]made war upon their allies and tributaries, but had even put many of their own citizens to death. Their largest revenues were also endangered[c], for Asia was at that time the richest and most productive of all the Roman provinces.

[a]Text *B. G.* 3. 19. 6. [b]Text 4. [c]Ex. 52. d.

CHAPTER 7

54. Not only were the glory of the commonwealth, the welfare of the allies, and[268] the greatest public revenues at stake[a] [130]in the

[a]Text 6.

Asiatic war, but large properties had been invested by many Romans in Asia, which would all be lost [214] if Pompey were not sent as soon as possible to check the attacks of the king. [186] Inasmuch as the misfortunes of a great number of citizens could not be separated from the public cause, it was [69] the part of wisdom [235] to bear in mind [220] what [171] had happened at the beginning of the war; for at that time [205] when upon the suspension of payments in Asia credit fell even in Rome, all men had been taught that great fortunes could [224] not be lost in one state [b] without involving [171] other states in the same calamity.

[b] = *so as not to involve* (§ 196).

CHAPTER 8

55. Although Lucullus, who had been sent to Asia [131] eight years before to conduct the war with Mithridates, had not been able to destroy the power of the king [19], he had, nevertheless, accomplished [a] so much by his persistence and his wise policy that all men bestowed upon him [b] such praise as is due to a brave man and a great commander. The town of the Cyzicenes, which Mithridates was besieging [107] with a large force thoroughly [c] equipped, had been freed [101] from its extreme danger. Then, [203] when he had overpowered [d] and sunk a powerful fleet which was being sent [137] to Italy, he captured a great many cities of Pontus and Cappadocia, so that the great [20] king, stripped [101] of the realm of his fathers, fled as a suppliant to other nations and to other kings.

[a] = *so great things.* [b] = *so much of praise* (§ 70) *how much is,* etc. [c] = *with all things.* [d] Cf. Ex. 52. c.

CHAPTER 9 (TO § 24)

56. Once on a time from that same Pontus which was the kingdom of Mithridates [20] the famous Medea [228] is said to have fled [a] against the will of her father with Jason. [b] Fearing [195] that her

[a] Invitus (§ 126). [b] Ex. 2. c.

father would pursue, she [127]murdered her brother and scattered his limbs on the sea, [188]that her father[19], who[c] she knew would try[d] [193]to gather the scattered bones of his son, might thus be delayed. So Mithridates, when fleeing from his realm, left behind a vast quantity of silver and gold and beautiful things, in order that, [232]while the Roman soldiers were plundering[e] this treasure, he might escape from their hands. Despairing of his fortunes[87], he arrived [f]at the court of Tigranes, king [64]of Armenia, who received[g] him kindly[h] and promised [227]to protect[i] him from the Roman army.

[c] Subject of ind. disc. depending on *knew*. [d] **Conor.** [e] = *these things*. [f] **Ad.** [g] Cf. Ex. 52. c. [h] **Hospitio** (§ 122). [i] Text 19.

CHAPTER 9 (FROM § 24)

57. Lucullus pursued Mithridates into Armenia, and, [218]although he fought[a] several successful engagements, he was unable to capture the king[22], because the soldiers, affected by the remoteness of the locality and by longing [60]for their friends, begged an early return rather than a further advance. Mithridates, accordingly, was able not only to return to his kingdom, but to gather a large force [108]with which [188]to renew the war; for it generally happens [198]that kings, [b]when they are in distress, easily attract to their aid the resources of many [182]who think that the name [c]of king is great and holy. And so [203]after he believed that his army was sufficiently large, he made a successful attack upon the Romans who had recently[d] been victorious.

[a] Use utor (text 23 *ad fin.*). [b] Use pass. ptc. [c] Use adj. [d] **Nuper.**

CHAPTER 10

58. After this disaster Lucullus was ordered to hand over the army to Manius Glabrio. But the Romans soon perceived[a] that [257]to carry on war with the most powerful monarchs and the most warlike states of Asia, a general better versed [74]in military science

[a] Text 26.

[260]must be chosen. [b]It was not a difficult matter to decide [220]whom they should appoint, for Gnaeus Pompey [79]was believed by all, both citizens and allies, to be the only man [184]who could finish so great and so dangerous a war. From school he had gone off at once to his father's army; when[c] a mere youth he was himself a general-in-chief; and he had been trained to a knowledge of most varied kinds of warfare, not under the orders of others, but under his own command.

[b] = *nor was the deliberation difficult whom*, etc. [c] Omit.

CHAPTER 11

59. Cicero said that language could[224] not be found worthy of the merit of Pompey, for all the [a]good qualities of a general existed[b] in him alone [c]to such a degree that all other commanders who [225]had fought either for[d] the Romans or against them were[225] not his[92] equal; that not only many and powerful foreign nations [e]bore testimony [f]to this effect, but Italy herself had [g]several times been delivered [101]from the dangers of war [108]by his bravery, diligence, and [h]wise counsel; that finally all seas and all shores gave their testimony, for, although for many years a war had been carried on against the pirates [144]over the whole sea, [i]without, however, lessening even[j] one peril of seafaring, Pompey in a single summer had brought that disgraceful and long-standing war to a close.

[a] = *merits*. [b] = *were* (§ 224). [c] = *so great*. [d] Ex. 51. b. [e] = *were witnesses*. [f] Omit. [g] Use a comparative adverb. [h] One word. [i] Use a rel. clause of characteristic. [j] *Not even*, see Ex. 10. f.

CHAPTER 12 (TO § 34)

60. [128]In summer for many years the whole sea had been so overrun[a] [113]with pirates that no Roman army had set out from Brundisium to Greece or Asia except in the dead of winter. No tribute had been safe for the Romans, no ally had been defended, [218]al-

[a] Text 31.

though formerly the Roman armies and Roman fleets had often fought [188] to protect not [b] their own homes, but the fortunes of their allies. Not only had ambassadors who were coming to Rome from foreign states [c] fallen into the hands of the pirates, but Roman citizens as well; the children of a Roman magistrate had been carried off, a Roman fleet had been captured near the mouth of the Tiber, and those harbors of Italy from which Rome [d] drew the very [e] breath of life had been plundered.

[b] Although in a purpose clause, **non** should be used here, as it limits a single word, not the whole clause. [c] = *come into power*. [d] = *Romans* (§ **300**). [e] Express by hendiadys.

CHAPTER 12 (FROM § 34)

61. [215] If the Romans had [a] appointed for this war, by which Italy and all the allies had been burdened for many years, a general less skilled [b] [74] in military science than Pompey, perhaps [c] they would not have been able to conquer the pirates. Indeed [d], Cicero, when he was urging [c] [190] that Pompey should be chosen [a], said that no man had believed that the dangerous and long-protracted war could be finished by one commander [128] in all years or by all commanders in one year. Yet Pompey, [203] as soon as he had been appointed, [f] before the navigation season opened, sent out ships [g] to strengthen and defend all the states [182] which were [h] under the power of Rome, [i] and then beginning the war in the early spring, brought it to a close in the middle of summer.

[a] Text 27. [b] Text 28. [c] Ex. 41. c. [d] **Quidem**, post-positive. [e] **Suadeo**. [f] = *the sea not yet seasonable for navigation*. [g] Use a rel. purpose cl. (§ **188**) with passive vbs. [h] Text 33. [i] **Deinde cum** (§ **203**).

CHAPTER 13

62. Cicero asked his fellow-citizens [190] to consider briefly [220] how many [a] good qualities of a commander existed in Gnaeus Pompey, and he said that by a comparison of other generals who had been

[a] Ex. 59. a.

[117]less faithful he could most easily make them understand [197 117]how great were Pompey's [19] justice and self-restraint. He [b]mentioned nobody, however, by name; [c]so that, [232]unless a man was willing to admit that he himself [29] was not innocent, he could not be angry with him [d]. And so when he had bidden them recollect the misfortunes [77 231]which many towns, not only of foreign peoples, but even of Italy herself, had suffered on account of the avarice of Roman generals, he [e]asserted that Pompey's armies had never injured any [39] people [87] [f]which had once [g] been subdued.

[b] *Mentioned by name,* one word. [c] = *so that nobody* (§ **196,** footnote), *unless he,* etc. [d] For form, cf. § **22** and § **27** end; for construction, cf. § **87**. [e] *Asserted that never* = *denied* (**nego**) *that ever* (text 34). [f] Express by a ptc. [g] Omit.

CHAPTER 14

63. [130]In the war [a] with the pirates Pompey showed [b] [221]that he could restrain [c] not only himself [29], but also his soldiers. For when he had set out for Asia, he arrived in that distant land so quickly, that it had to be acknowledged [95]by all that no greed had called him from his purposed course for plunder, no lust for pleasure, no toil for rest; and although Greece was full of statues [74] and paintings and all other beautiful things, [d]even these did not delay him a single day [128]. Finally, in Asia by his accessibility and mercy he made all men love [197] him no less than they had previously feared him for his bravery [123].

[a] = *war waged with,* etc. [b] Text **2,** *ad fin.* [c] Text **38.** [d] Ex. **10.** f.

CHAPTER 15

64. [211]If we admit that men are influenced [196]to love or hate or fear no less by fancy or rumor than by reasoning, [178]who can doubt [201]that Pompey [165]will accomplish more by his reputation [a] alone than other generals could [b] effect by [c]force of arms? All nations

[a] = *influence.* [b] A protasis, *if they should try* (**214**), is implied. [c] Use hendiadys.

know how much the [d]price of corn fell [225]as soon as he [171]had been appointed to carry on the war against the pirates. And, to cite but one example of his exploits, when the Roman army had met disaster in Pontus, and Tigranes was threatening the province[87] with a strong force, Asia [215]would have been lost if Pompey had not providentially arrived in that neighborhood and checked the armies of the enemy by his mere[e] name and reputation.

[d] = *cheapening of corn followed.* [e] = *itself.*

CHAPTER 16

65. We can easily see how great was the reputation of Pompey among the enemies of Rome[a] [219]if we only remember that the Cretans, although there was[226] a Roman general with his army stationed[b] in their island, sent an envoy almost to the ends of the earth to tell Pompey that they preferred to surrender themselves and all their fortunes to him. But, [188]not to speak [c]at greater length of his reputation, it remains for me [198]to mention his good fortune. For it is not by valor alone, but also by fortune that the great exploits of generals are accomplished. Now[d], Pompey's good fortune was so remarkable that even the elements[e] seemed always to obey his will[87, 267] and Cicero did not hesitate [202]to assert that no man had ever ventured to pray the immortal gods for so great blessings as they had bestowed on Pompey.

[a] = *Roman people* (§ 300). [b] Omit. [c] Comparative of **longe**. [d] **Autem** (§ 270). [e] = *winds and tempests.*

CHAPTER 17

66. "Even [215]if Pompey were not already in that region," said[a] Cicero, "he [b]would, nevertheless, deserve to be appointed at once to take charge of a war so important." There were, however, distinguished and patriotic men at Rome [182]who did not agree with

[a] To introduce a direct quotation, use **inquit**, and for its position, cf. § 291, note. [b] Use the pass. periphrastic (§ 166), and for mood, cf. § 216.

this view of Cicero, [c]not because they wished to deny that Pompey possessed in the highest degree all the qualities[d] of a commander, but because they believed that it was not for the interest of the state[83] for so much power to be bestowed upon one man. But it must be granted that, [230]if such arguments had prevailed the year before[e] when the bill was proposed concerning the appointment of Pompey as commander-in-chief against the pirates, the Romans undoubtedly[f] would not have finished that war [g]so soon.

[c]When a cause is given as not effective, the subjunctive is used. [d]Text 29. [e]Prior. [f]Sine dubio. [g]Text 34.

CHAPTER 18

67. [215]If the Roman people[89] had been persuaded by the arguments of Catulus and Hortensius [205]when they talked against the proposition of Gabinius, it would have been deprived of the assistance[101] rendered[a] by Pompey's great [b]military knowledge and experience. Had this happened, perhaps the pirates would have remained unconquered, and the Romans[95] would have had to admit that they had lost all the maritime power[101] and glory which their ancestors had bequeathed[c] them. For during many years without interruption the great[20] Roman people, whose ancestors had defeated the most skilful and best equipped enemies [110]in so many naval battles, had [d]not been able to defend even the harbors and coast of Italy. We can easily believe, therefore, that many patriots[e] during those years were ashamed to mount the Rostra which had been adorned by their fathers with naval booty.

[a]Praesto (§ 309). [b]Text *B. G.* 3. 8. 1. [c]=*left*. [d]=Ex. 10. f. [e]Text 51.

CHAPTER 19

68. Your fellow-citizens, Quintus Hortensius, do not doubt [201]that you have spoken [121]with good intentions [265]against Pompey and Gabinius; [a]but if you [213]take into consideration [220]what Pompey has

[a]Sin autem.

accomplished in a single year on land and sea under the law of Gabinius, you will be ashamed, [b]I fancy, to remember that you have tried [193]to prevent his [194]being [c]put in charge of the war [301]with Mithridates. Moreover, who is more worthy than Gabinius [184]to be assigned as a partner of the [d]exploits of [20]that great general? For not only [e]is he the man who proposed [f]the bill by which Pompey [304] was appointed to the command of the naval war, but Pompey, too, earnestly requests [190]that Gabinius [304] may be given him as his lieutenant. In my opinion, at any rate, fellow-citizens, since many other men who have been tribunes of the people have been appointed lieutenants in the very next year, Gabinius surely ought not to be deprived [g]of the same privilege [74].

[b]**Opinor**, used parenthetically (§ 291, note). [c]Text 27. [d]= *things done by*. [e]*Is . . . who* = **ipse** (§ 29). [f]Text 52. [g]Use **expers**.

CHAPTER 20

69. After Cicero had tried [a]to overthrow the arguments of Hortensius, he said that it remained for him [b]to speak briefly about the opinion of Quintus Catulus. [188]That he might not appear [c]to be belittling a man [117]of such wisdom and integrity, he recalled the flattering recognition of his worth and merit which Catulus [304] had recently received from his fellow-citizens at the time [205]when they declared with one accord that, if anything [38] happened [168] to Pompey [110], they would put all their hope in him alone. But when Catulus had said [d]in the case of Pompey that he wished no [70]new step to be taken contrary to the established custom of their fathers, Cicero did not hesitate [202]to disagree with him. "For [e]the greater the dangers which threaten the state [87]," said [f]he, "the more ought we all to enjoy the advantage of the valor and military skill of our greatest men."

[a]Text 52. [b]For mood, cf. § 198; for sequence, § 171. [c]Text 57. [d]*In the case of*, one word. [e]*The greater . . . the more* = **quo . . . eo** with comparatives (§ 116). [f]Ex. 66. a.

CHAPTER 21

70. [205] When Catulus said that he did not wish any [70] new measures [a] contrary to the precedents of their fathers to be taken in the case of Pompey, he [228] seems to have forgotten [b] [220] how many new precedents [226] had already been established in the case of this man, [121] with the approval [c] not only of himself but of many distinguished men [65] of the same rank. For when he was a mere youth and a private citizen, Pompey [d] raised an army and gained brilliant successes [121] under [293] his own command. Afterwards, although it was unusual [198] for an army to be given to a man [182] who had not held [e] a magistracy, [f] the management of the campaign in Africa was intrusted to him, and when he had concluded the war and [310] [g] brought home a victorious army, he [h] was allowed, [i] though only a knight, to celebrate a triumph.

[a] Text 60. [b] **Obliviscor.** [c] = *good-will.* [d] Use a pronoun (§ 304), and put it at the beginning of the sentence (§ 287). [e] **Habeo.** [f] Use a gerundive construction (§ 251). [g] *Brought home*, one word. [h] The Latin vb. is impersonal. [i] *Though only*, omit. The emphasis on *knight* should be expressed by its position in the clause (§ 287).

CHAPTER 22

71. [215] If Pompey had not conducted his campaigns so successfully [a] in Italy, Africa, Spain, and on the sea, we should perhaps admit, fellow-citizens, that Hortensius and Catulus [b] are doing right in trying [193] to prevent us [194] from appointing him to the command of the war [91] with the pirates. But [212] if we have seen [c] from the outcome of events that these men have [d] not taken sufficient thought for the public welfare [87], and that their judgment on the character [e] of Pompey [260] is not to be approved, [174] let us not hesitate [202] to defend our opinion, and to select [f] for this great war in Asia the one man [184] whom not only the greater part of our fellow-citizens but all our allies [g] most earnestly desire. [213] If we do this [288], foreign states will

[a] **Feliciter.** [b] = *rightly try.* [c] = *from the things themselves.* [d] *Not sufficient*, one word. [e] = *worthiness.* [f] Use **ad** (text 27) with a gerundive (*this so great war to be waged*). [g] Text 57.

believe that we have [h]at last heard their complaints, [267]and are no longer[i] more eager [74]to plunder than to protect them[254].

[h] Ex. 28. b. [i] Ex. 2. d.

CHAPTER 23

72. I ask you, fellow-citizens, [190]to consider [220]whether the influence of Catulus and Hortensius ought to be so great that it can persuade us[87] [190]not to send to the war [301]with the king the only man [184]whom our [293]allies would rejoice [a]to have come into their cities. [217]As it, indeed, the allies did [b]not know that, [218]while most Roman commanders, [c]owing to their lust and desire of plunder, would[d] make war upon them no less than upon the enemy, Pompey is [117]of such uprightness and self-control that, remembering[e] he was sent to conquer the enemy alone, he will restrain the desires of his soldiers [101]from the homes, wives, and treasures of his allies and friends. Since you have a man not only endowed with such a character but also thoroughly experienced [74]in all kinds of warfare, [175]do not disgrace[f] the Roman people [259]by appointing a general [182]who will try more to enrich himself than to subdue your foes.

[a] Pf. inf. of indir. discourse. [b] *Not know,* one word. [c] Text 65. [d] **Volo.** [e] = *holding* (**tenens**) *in memory* (§ 108). [f] = *affect with disgrace.*

CHAPTER 24

73. When Cicero had shown that the war with Mithridates was [a]so inevitable that it could not be neglected, and of such magnitude that it must be managed with the greatest care, he tried to persuade his fellow-countrymen [221]that they[94] had but one general suitable[b] to be placed in command. Although there were some [182]who did not think that the [c]whole power should be conferred upon one man, nevertheless, the majority believed that, [229]if the war were not committed to Pompey, it [224]would be protracted[d] for many years. Accordingly they not only gave their warmest approval to the [e]bill

[a] Text 49. [b] Text 57. [c] Text 67. [d] **Produco.** [e] Text 54.

of Manilius, but they also believed that Cicero had spoken truthfully when he declared that whatever he had undertaken in this case he had undertaken not for the sake [253]of winning favor for himself, but for the public welfare.

Cicero, Archias

CHAPTER 1

74. Aulus Licinius Archias was a poet and friend of Cicero, whom the latter[15] defended [a]when he was accused [b]of having illegally[c] obtained Roman citizenship. In the first part of his speech Cicero said that he ought to employ for Archias all the powers of intellect and oratory he possessed, for the latter had been his chief guide [257]in the pursuit of all the [d]branches of literature. He added that [229]if his oratory had ever aided any one it ought surely to aid him who gave it. [83]It made no difference that [300]poetry and oratory were not the same, since all the arts were united by [e]a sort of relationship.

[a] *When he was accused*, pf. pass. participle. [b] Use an indicative clause with **quod**. [c] **Contra leges.** [d] *Branches of literature*, simplify. [e] *A sort of*, **quasi**, a word with which the Roman often qualified a metaphor, apologizing for it, *so to speak, if I may use the term*, etc.

CHAPTER 2

75. The trial of Archias was conducted before a praetor and jurors whom Cicero called well versed in literature. And so he asked them [190]to pardon him [185]for using a style of speech [a]not only quite different from his own ordinary custom, but also from the style [b]expected in the law-courts. For [274], [186]since he was speaking in behalf of a man of the greatest learning, he discoursed freely on

[a] Use a relative clause, see text. [b] One adjective in Latin.

the subjects[393] of culture and literature. He [c]felt sure that[221] in this way[121] he could easily convince the jurors that Archias ought not to be deprived of the citizenship[101], but was [184]worthy to receive it even [230]if he were not a citizen.

Note the long period occupying nearly the whole of this chapter. Read § **296.**

[c] *Feel sure* = *know*, **scio.**

CHAPTER 3

76. Archias was born at Antioch[138] and was remarkable from boyhood for his ability[106] and skill in writing[253]. [203]After travelling throughout[a] Asia, where he enjoyed great fame as a poet, he came to Rome[138] in the year [132]102 B.C. Not long before[131] he [b]had received great rewards[86] for[c] his poetry in the cities of [d]Southern Italy. He was still[e] a young man, and yet[270] he was at once received [46]as an intimate friend by the Luculli. The famous[20] Metellus Numidicus, Quintus Catulus, Lucius Crassus, and[268] many other noble men became his friends. In fact, he was beloved by all who even pretended to [f]have an interest in literature.

[a] **Per (§ 263).** [b] *Had received* = *had been presented with*, etc., cf. § **86.** [c] Use **propter.** [d] = *Great Greece.* [e] **Etiam tum.** [f] *Have an interest*, simplify. For construction, see § **221.**

CHAPTER 4

77. The law of Silvanus and Carbo declared all to be Roman citizens who had held residence in Italy and who, [125]after obtaining the citizenship of an allied state, appeared before the praetor [128]within sixty days. Now[a], in the first[b] place, Archias had already had a residence at Rome [128]for many years [209]before he accompanied Lucullus to Sicily. Secondly[b], he was presented with the citizenship[86] of Heraclea, an allied state, [272]not only because of the influence[123] of Lucullus, but also because of his own worth. And lastly[b]

[a] *Now*, omit. [b] Ex. **21.** e.

he appeared before the praetor within sixty days. Though the records of Heraclea have been burned, here is[287] Lucullus, here are[287] the Heraclean envoys who swear[c] [227] that all I have said is true.

[c] **Iuro.**

CHAPTERS 4–5

78. It cannot be doubted [201] that Archias appeared before a praetor, for his name stands on the records. Moreover[270], the Greeks have often given the citizenship to men of no ability[117]. [a] Would they have refused it to Archias, a man of great genius? But, [b] you say, his name is not on the census-list. All know that when Archias first came to Rome no census was taken, and, during the last two censorships, he has been in the provinces with our generals. [c] And besides he who is [d] rated in the list is only proved to have performed the acts of a citizen. This [e] same thing can be said of Archias; for he has both received legacies and made his own will in accordance with Roman laws.

[a] Equivalent to an apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, cf. §§ **215** and **178**. [b] Omit. The force of *But, you say*, is given by the proper conjunction, cf. § **270**. [c] *And besides*, **praeterea**. [d] *Rated in the list*, **census**. [e] Use the relative.

CHAPTER 6

79. Poets refresh the mind worn out with toil, [a] and [215] unless the mind were daily refreshed we should have nothing to say worth listening to. No one can say that I have not always aided those who needed my services. And so no one ought to blame me if I have employed my leisure time in the study of literature, for from literature I draw all the power of oratory I possess. Literature teaches that praise and honor are the greatest things [b] in the world, for it is full of examples[74] of great and good men whom I have

[a] *And unless the mind*, avoid **et** by means of a relative, cf. § **310**. [b] Omit.

striven[c] to imitate. And yet all these examples [215]would have perished had it not been for literature.

Note the fine anaphora in **Sed pleni omnes**, etc. Cf. § **287**.

[c] Ex. 56. d.

CHAPTER 7

80. Not all the great men [a]of the world have been educated, [b]it is true, and ability without learning has more often been deserving of praise than learning without ability, [270]and yet when the same man possesses both ability and learning something remarkable [c]is usually produced. I might[173] mention as examples Africanus, Laelius, the famous[20] old man Cato, and[268] many others. And so we may feel sure that literary studies are very valuable.[84] Even [215]if they were not we should pursue them merely because of the pleasure [d]they afford. For they surpass[e] all other pleasures, [185]from the fact that they are [69]suited to all occasions, all places, and every period of life.

[a] *Of the world*, omit. [b] *It is true*, **quidem**. [c] *Is usually produced*, **soleo** + infinitive. [d] Omit. [e] **Supero**.

CHAPTER 8

81. Mere skill of body can affect men [196]to such a degree that they weep at the death of actors just as [a]they did recently in the case of Roscius. [116]How much more ought we to be affected by mental[b] skill and genius? Such[c] genius Archias possesses, for poets receive their power by a certain divine inspiration; all other things may be learned by study. Indeed poets ought to be considered sacred, as Ennius calls them. If stones and brute beasts are moved by the power of poetry, ought we educated men [d]to think of depriving a man of citizenship whose poetry is equal to [24]that of the ancients?

[a] Omit *they did*. If represented at all, the Latin would repeat the verb *weep*, using the perfect tense. [b] Many English adjectives are to be rendered by the genitive of a noun in Latin. [c] **Talis**. Cf. § **287**. [d] *To think of depriving* = *to think about depriving*, cf. § **259**.

CHAPTER 9

82. Archias has celebrated in verse the glory of the Roman people and has been a friend even of Gaius Marius, who conquered the Cimbri and Teutones. Famous men love those who are able to celebrate their great deeds. So Marius and Lucullus loved Archias. But the great[20] victories of Marius and Lucullus have rendered famous the name of the Roman people. When the enemy's fleet was sunk near[139] Tenedos, when their leaders were slain, the glory [69]belonged to the [a]Roman people. And so those who have celebrated the great deeds of our generals have [31]at the same time celebrated the fame of the Roman people itself.

[a]Note and imitate the skilful anaphora of Cicero in the position of **Populus Romanus**, cf. § 287.

CHAPTER 10

83. If Ennius received the citizenship [185]for having praised the deeds of great men, [281]does not Archias deserve the same reward[111]? Rome has conquered the world, and her fame ought to reach the limits of the world; [270]and yet Latin is read only in Italy. But the Greek[a] poetry of Archias has spread the fame of Rome [b]far and wide, because almost all peoples understand Greek. Indeed [215]if there were no poets, the deeds of great men would be forgotten. The famous[20] Alexander considered Achilles fortunate because Homer sang his praises. [215]If Archias had asked any of our great men for the citizenship, he would certainly have received it. Sulla, who gave the citizenship to Gauls and Spaniards, [c]would certainly have rewarded Archias.

[a]Arrange the sentence so as to emphasize *Greek*, cf. § 287. [b]**Longe lateque.** [c]Equivalent to an apodosis (§ 215).

CHAPTER 11

84. I have said that all[44] the best men are attracted by love of glory. Even the very philosophers, who pretend[a] [221]to despise glory,

[a]Text 6.

wish their names to be eternal[b] with their books. Ennius, the poet, fought against the Aetolians [126] under the leadership of Fulvius, who actually[c] dedicated spoils to the Muses. Even [266] I myself admit that I am touched with the same desire and wish the deeds of my consulship to endure forever. Glory is the reward of excellence, and, [125] if this is taken away, [182] there is nothing in life worth striving for. Though we ourselves may die, yet our names can last forever.

[b] Text 30. [c] Ultro.

CHAPTER 12

85. It is impossible for everything to die with us, and it is much better to leave behind as memorials the likeness of our virtues than, as many great men [a] have done, statues [104] of our persons. [b] It matters not [220] whether we shall ourselves feel this fame after death [c] or not, [219] provided that we now take delight in the hope and expectation of it.

In view of all this, judges, I trust that you will pardon what [87] I have said not in accordance with the ordinary custom of the law-courts on behalf of Archias, a sacred poet who will cause the fame of Rome [197] to be remembered, and a man [d] in every way worthy of the citizenship.

[a] Omit, cf. Ex. 81. a. [b] *It matters not*, nihil refert (§ 83, second note). [c] See § 220, note. [d] Use a relative.

College Entrance Examinations

86. While Caesar was thus engaged, he desired to know what was being done elsewhere. A message was brought to him from Titurius, whom he had *placed in command* [1] of the troops at the bridge: "The Belgians have changed their plan, and have come down to the river.

1. praeficere

I fear they will cross it at a *ford*[2], and thus attack us *in the rear*[3]." Caesar immediately despatched his horse and *light troops*[4] to prevent their carrying out this design. These *squadrons*,[5] crossing the river by the bridge, reached the ford before the Belgians had passed it, and attacked them with their missiles while they were still *struggling*[6] in the middle of the stream. Part of them who had already gained the opposite side were surrounded and *cut in pieces*[7] by the cavalry. The Belgians *were forced*[8] to retreat to their former encampment, where they heard that Divitiacus had entered their confines and was now wasting their homes with sword and fire. They, therefore, determined to abandon their *attempt*[9] and to return each to defend his own land.

2. **vadum**
3. **a tergo**
4. **miles expeditus**
5. **turma**
6. **impeditus**
7. **trucidare**
8. **cogere**
9. **inceptum**

AMHERST, *June*, 1897.

87. Under these circumstances, conscript fathers, I have determined to refer to you *the question of*[1] the punishment of the conspirators. Thus far two *opinions*[2] are *proposed*[3]: Silanus thinks that those who have tried to destroy the empire of the Roman people should be immediately put to death; Caesar, on the other hand, holds that death was *ordained*[4] by the immortal gods not for the sake of punishment, but as a rest from labor. He, therefore, urges that the property of these wretches be *confiscated*[5] and they be *imprisoned*[6] for life in our municipal towns. Do not doubt, conscript fathers, that I see clearly where my own *interest*[7] lies. If you adopt the opinion of Caesar, I shall have less fear of popular hatred. But if you prefer the opinion of Silanus, I shall easily be able to acquit myself of the *charge*[8] of cruelty. Wherefore, I urge you to act boldly in defence of the safety of the Roman people. You have

1. Omit
2. **sententia**
3. **ferre**
4. **constituere**
5. **publicare**
6. **in vincula dare**
7. **interesse**
8. **crimen**

a consul mindful of you, forgetful of himself, who will not hesitate to carry out your decrees.

AMHERST, *June*, 1898.

88. Caesar made a speech in order to encourage his men. He told them they ought not to be disturbed in mind; that the unfavorable nature of the ground (place) had brought this about. "Do not," said he, "attribute it to the enemy's valor. I am going to lead the army out of the camp and draw up a line of battle in a suitable place. Then you will see whether Vercingetorix will come down on to level ground or not." But Vercingetorix remained in the same place, and so Caesar fought only a slight cavalry engagement, which, however, was successful. A few days afterwards he proceeded to the river Elaver in order to repair the bridges and lead the army across.

BOWDOIN, *June*, 1897.

89. When Hannibal, after being defeated by the Romans, had finally fled-for-refuge (*confugio*) to Prusias, King of Bithynia, the Romans sent envoys to the king to command him (relative of purpose) to surrender (*dedo*) Hannibal to the Roman people. Hannibal, however, perceiving that his end had come, determined (*decerno*) to die by his own hand. Accordingly, having been informed by his slaves that the house was surrounded by soldiers, he took the poison which he always had with him in a ring, saying that his enemies should never capture him alive.

Thus perished miserably that famous man whom many have called the greatest general of all ages and nations.

BOWDOIN, *June*, 1898.

90. I. Tell me why you are ashamed of your work; or are you only tired of it? I went to my uncle's in Utica, but I did not enjoy his beautiful pictures, for I was not skilled enough in art. The general left the city with his troops and hastened to the frontier to attack the enemy. I cannot tell you how happy I am at your great vic-

tory. The girl married a man who was fifteen years older than herself. When asked why, she replied: "It is better to be an old man's darling (deliciae) than a young man's slave." Do you think you could trust a woman who says such things as that?

II. Hannibal, being conquered by Scipio, fled to Antiochus, King of Syria. Ambassadors were sent from Rome to Antiochus, among whom was Scipio, who asked Hannibal whom he thought to be the greatest general. Hannibal replied that Alexander, King of Macedon, seemed to him to have been the greatest, because with small forces he had routed innumerable armies. Then Scipio asked him whom he placed second. "Pyrrhus," said he, "because he first taught how to measure out a camp." Again, when Scipio asked whom he placed third, he replied, "Myself." Then Scipio, smiling, said, "What, then, would you say if you had conquered me?" "I should have placed myself before Alexander and Pyrrhus and all others."

BRYN MAWR, *June*, 1898.

91. A few days ago I met in Rome Cato the censor, which day, I remember, was the 19th of April. As soon as he saw me, he began to speak of the growing power of Carthage, which has almost recovered from the former war. In fact, he said he should not cease to fear that city until he should have learned of its utter destruction. "O that our young Scipio," said he, "might soon finish the work begun by his grandfather."

CALIFORNIA, *August*, 1896.

92. Demetrius had taken the city of Megara. Upon his asking Stilpo, the philosopher, if he had lost anything, the other answered, "I have lost nothing; for all my property is still mine." At this the monarch marvelled much; for his patrimony had been plundered, his sons carried off, and his country conquered. No doubt the philosopher meant Demetrius to understand that he cared nothing for material possessions, and that no enemy could deprive him of the possessions which alone he valued, namely, those of the mind.

CALIFORNIA, *August*, 1898.

(*Mark all long vowels.*)

93. Cicero, on being informed of these actions of Fulvia, thought he must no longer delay. He summoned the senate to meet in the Temple of Jupiter Stator. Catiline, with strange boldness, came in and took his seat among the other senators, who, however, immediately left him alone. Cicero now delivered the famous speech that is called the First Oration against Catiline. The guilty man rose to reply, but was prevented from speaking by the shouts of the senators. He immediately left the senate house; and, perceiving that he was not safe at Rome, he called his fellow-conspirators[1] together, bade Lentulus, the praetor of the city, and the others, carry out what had been determined upon, and left Rome before daylight to join Manlius at Faesulae.

[1] = **socii.**

CHICAGO, *December*, 1897.

(*Mark all long vowels.*)

94. "Then Cicero arose and poured forth the first of the four celebrated Catilinarian orations, which begins with the well-known words: 'How long, Catiline, will you abuse our patience?' He showed him that he knew what he had done, what he intended, that he was informed of all his plans, and called upon him to relieve the city of his hated presence, and to take his companions in crime with him. Catiline, with downcast eyes and faltering voice, begged the senate not to judge him harshly. But his voice was drowned by the cry 'Traitor!' 'Parricide!' He rushed from the senate chamber, and, after conferring with the leaders of the conspiracy, he left the city at nightfall, and hastened to the camp of Manlius."

CHICAGO, *June*, 1898.

95. We have been expelled from our own country, and have come hither against our will; but if you wish by kindness to earn our gratitude we can be most useful friends.

Envoys had come to him from the town to beg him to pardon their offences and to spare their lives.

The force on guard is so small that not even the wall is manned (*cingere murum*), and no one dares to come beyond the fortifications.

COLUMBIA, *June*, 1898.

96. Such being the case, conscript fathers, see to it that you do not fail in your duty to those whose help has never failed you. Our common country is beset by the torches and weapons of an impious conspiracy. Desperate men are threatening the citadel and the Capitol, the temples of the gods, and even our very homes and firesides; and upon you rests the decision whether all that we see about us shall stand, or the whole republic be destroyed.

COLUMBIA, *September*, 1898.

97. 1. All good citizens will obey the laws of the Roman people.

2. These brave men blocked the way of the enemy with their own bodies.

3. Before I set out from Rome, you returned to the city from Asia.

4. Take care that those who are absent may not have a place to which to return.

5. If he had known that you were to come to-day, he would have remained at Athens.

6. He said that he should have done this before setting out, but that he did not know how important it was.

CORNELL, *June*, 1897.

98. 1. When Caesar was in Gaul, the Belgians began to conspire against the Romans.

2. You must resist old age, if you wish to remain young.

3. Who is so unjust as not to defend a man whom he believes to be innocent?

4. Have no fear that he will not come; there is no doubt that he will leave home to-morrow; it may be he has left already.

5. The old republic was not overthrown till more than seven hundred years after the founding of the city.

6. If I could believe that you would be a true friend, I should no longer fear to tell you what I did before returning to my home in the country.

CORNELL, *September*, 1898.

99. On the next day Caesar led out his forces from both (*uterque*) the camps, and advancing a short distance from the larger camp, he drew up his army and offered battle to the enemy. As soon as (*ubi*) he perceived that the enemy did not come out, he withdrew. Then Ariovistus sent a part of his troops to attack (*oppugnare*) the smaller camp, and a sharp battle was fought till evening (*vesper*). Then Caesar, calling a council, said that he should send out a detachment of cavalry (*ala*) to reconnoitre (*explorare*), and when they returned, he should order the soldiers to prepare (*corpora curare*) for an engagement.

DARTMOUTH, *June*, 1897.

100. If you wish to be of service to my glory, go forth with your band of conspirators, betake yourself to Manlius, separate yourself from good men, make war upon your country, so that you may seem not driven out to strangers, but invited to friends. Yet I know that some whom you have sent before you are waiting for you. Nature bore you and fortune has saved you for such folly. In the camp to which you go you will have a place to show that renowned endurance of hunger, cold, and want of everything, but you will undertake robbery rather than war.

DARTMOUTH, *June*, 1898.

101. Although only a small part of the summer was left, Caesar determined to cross into Britain, for he had observed that in nearly all the wars with the Gauls aid had been furnished to the enemy by the inhabitants of that island. Since, however, he could learn nothing from the Gauls about the nature of the island and of its people, and was afraid that some misfortune might happen to him if he acted incautiously, he sent a lieutenant to find out all he could about that portion of Britain which was nearest to Gaul.

In the mean time Caesar gathered together about eighty ships in which to carry across the troops if a favorable report was made by his lieutenant. When after five days this officer had returned and reported all that he had seen, Caesar at once set sail with two legions of infantry and ordered the cavalry to follow with all possible speed.

The cavalry, however, waited more than five days before setting out, and then proceeded so slowly that one battle had already been fought with the enemy before they came within sight of Caesar and the infantry.

HARVARD, *June*, 1897.

102. On learning that the Germans were preparing to invade Gaul, Caesar made up his mind to join his army at once. Having reached the winter-quarters, he quickly made all necessary arrangements for marching, and as soon as he could, started out with his army in the direction in which he had been told the Germans were encamped. When he was not many miles away from them, he met some ambassadors whom they had sent to tell him that they might be useful friends to him, if he would let them, and to ask him to assign them land in Gaul where they could live without being molested by their enemies. But Caesar was afraid that they were acting treacherously and refused to grant their request. He told them, however, that if they wished, they might settle on the farther banks of the Rhine in the country of the Ubii. So they went back to consult their countrymen in regard to this, but Caesar in the mean time kept on advancing, for he saw that it was necessary to force the Germans out of Gaul without delay.

HARVARD, *June*, 1898.

103. Caesar, because he remembered that the consul L. Crassus had been slain and his army routed and sent under the yoke by the Helvetians, did not think that their request ought to be granted: nor, moreover, did he believe that men whose feelings were hostile, if given leave to march through the province, would refrain from

injury and evil-doing. However, that time might be gained (intervene) for (until) the soldiers, whom he had ordered, to assemble, he replied to the ambassadors that he would take a day for deliberation.

JOHNS HOPKINS, *September*, 1897.

104. When now the turrets had approached the wall, Caesar learned from captives that Vercingetorix had moved his camp nearer to Avaricum and, together with his cavalry, was waiting in the place where he thought that our men would come the next day.

JOHNS HOPKINS, *September* 1898.

105. While war was being waged in Numidia against Jugurtha, the Cimbri and Teutones and other tribes of the Germans and Gauls threatened Italy, and routed several Roman armies. There was great fear in Rome, lest the city should be taken a second time by the Gauls. Therefore, Gaius Marius was elected consul, to make war on the Cimbri and Teutones. He fought two battles with the Cimbri and defeated them with great slaughter, capturing eighty thousand men, together with their king Tewtobodus. Then the Teutones invaded Italy, but were routed by Marius and Catulus near Verona. Thus Rome was saved by the skill and valor of Marius from the greatest danger which had threatened the city since its capture by the Gauls in 390 B.C.

MICHIGAN, *September*, 1898.

106. When Caesar made these inquiries (asked these things) of the envoys, he found that the Belgae long before had driven out the Gauls (use participial phrase) and that they were the only ones who had been able to prevent the Cimbri from entering (or invading) their country; that the Nervii, who were considered the fiercest among them, had promised fifty thousand armed men for this war.

While Caesar was waiting for reinforcements, the Belgae attacked a walled town of the Remi, which was eight miles from the Roman camp. So Iccius sent a messenger to say that unless aid were given

him, he would have to surrender the town. Caesar replied that he would send one legion to help the Remi because they had obeyed his orders.

PENNSYLVANIA. *June*, 1897.

107. 1. Caesar replied that there were no vacant lands in Gaul which so large a multitude could settle in, but that he would order the Ubii to allow them to settle in their territories. Caesar kept drawing nearer to the camp of the Germans, and they kept sending ambassadors to him, for the purpose, as he thought, of causing delay until their cavalry, which was away, should return.

2. To these men I say, "Be assured that the consuls are vigilant, that they have provided a sufficient guard for the city, and that the citizens have been warned to defend their homes with sentinels and guards. If you make the slightest attempt against your country, I shall immediately discover it."

PRINCETON, *September*, 1897.

108. 1. He says that you made him consul.

You said that you would not ask him for money.

I think that he would have conquered the Germans if you had helped him.

2. After he had learned the conspirators' plans, Cicero assembled the senate in the temple of Jupiter Stator, on the 8th of November, and accused Catiline of treason. That very night Catiline set out from Rome for Etruria in order to unite with Manlius, his lieutenant, before he should be apprehended.

3. Caesar sent thirteen horsemen to see where the enemy had pitched their camp. On their return (when they returned) they informed him that the camp was in a narrow valley where two streams met.

PRINCETON, *June*, 1898.

109. On the 8th of November, the consul Cicero asked Catiline in the senate whether he did not know that all had learned that he had conspired against the state. "All your plans," said he, "are

now clearer to me than daylight: you met your confederates at Laeca's house; you chose men to leave at Rome to burn the city and murder the optimates; you yourself, after killing me, intend to go to the army which Manlius is now collecting for you in Etruria. You ought to have been killed long ago by the command of the consul, but I will permit you to go—nay, I advise you to do so."

VANDERBILT, *September*, 1897.

110. When the ambassadors of that tribe came to the Roman general's camp, he asked them what they wished. They replied that they wished to put themselves and their people under the protection of the Roman people. "We have been driven," they said, "from our homes by the Chatti, with whom we could not contend, since they surpassed us in number. Now if we are permitted to settle in your territory, we will always be faithful to you; but if you make war on us, we can expect no help except from the immortal gods." Licinius replied that he would ask the senate about the matter; in the mean time he ordered them to remain where they were and not to devastate the country. He sent one of his legates to Rome to report the affair to the senate.

VANDERBILT, *September*, 1898.

111. To show you what is to your interest, I shall explain the matter fully. Caius Caesar believes that if the conspirators should be put to death now, the people would blame the senate bitterly. Many senators agree with Caesar. If we follow their opinion, these dangers will increase, and soon Catiline and his friends will do what they wish to do, get possession of Rome and put the most prominent men to death. Now I ask you, what ought the senate to fear most, the blame of a few men who have no foresight, or the utter destruction of this glorious republic.

VASSAR, *June*, 1897.

112. C. Caesar, who protected the state by his zeal, was rewarded by the senate with the greatest honors. For when we had no protection and were fearing the disastrous return of Antony, this youth

made ready an army, and warded off the danger. Who is there who does not know that if Caesar had not prepared an army, the return of Antony would have been our ruin? For he was so stirred up by his hatred of you and his slaughter of Roman citizens at Suessa that he thought of nothing but the overthrow of the Roman people.

VASSAR, *June*, 1898.

113. The day following, Vercingetorix convoked the assembly. He declares that he did not undertake this war for the sake of his own interests, but for the sake of the common liberty, and that, since one must yield to fortune, he offers himself to them for either purpose (*rem*), whether they choose (*velint*) to satisfy the Romans by his death or to deliver him up alive. Envoys are sent to Caesar on this matter. He orders their arms to be delivered up, their chiefs to be brought before him. He himself is seated within-his-lines (*in munitione*) in front of the camp. There the leaders are brought before him. Vercingetorix is given up, their arms are surrendered. Reserving the Aedui and Averni, that if possible he may through them recover their states, he distributes the rest of the captives, one to each man in the army in the name of booty.

WELLESLEY, *September*, 1897.

114. At daybreak Caesar ordered all those men who had taken stand on the mountain to come down into the plain from their higher positions and throw down their arms. This they did without any refusal, and with out-stretched hands threw themselves on the ground weeping, and begged him for safety. He comforted them and bade them rise, speaking a few words to them about his clemency, that they might feel less fear. Then he gave them into the charge of his own soldiers that none of them be harmed.

Are you not ashamed of your silence? Messengers informed Caesar that the army would be on the march three days later. I would like to know what you are going to do. Labienus feared the other legion would not come.

WELLESLEY, *June*, 1898.

115. I see, Conscript Fathers, that some of the citizens are plotting against the commonwealth. I have not punished them as yet; but I, the consul, am aware of their treachery, and all that they plan is straightway reported to me. I know where they have been and what leaders they have chosen. If that wicked wretch, Catiline, does not depart from the city, he and his accomplices (*socii*) will be seized and put to death. For the immortal gods have willed that death should be the penalty of such crimes.

WESLEYAN, *September*, 1897.

116. The king of the Germans was Ariovistus. Caesar sent messengers to him to demand that he should liberate the Gauls. Ariovistus insolently refused, saying that he wondered what business the Romans had in Gaul, which he (Ariovistus) had conquered. Then Caesar marched against him and defeated him in a great battle. Thus the Gauls were liberated from the power of the Germans, and returned to their allegiance to the Roman people.

insolently = *superbe.* return to allegiance = *in fidem redire.*

WESLEYAN, *June*, 1898.

117. In the five-hundred-and-fortieth year after the founding of the city (*a condita urbe*) Paulus and Varro were sent against Hannibal. At a town called Cannae in Apulia a battle was fought, in which both consuls were defeated. The consul Paulus was killed, thirty senators were either captured or slain, as well as three hundred nobles and forty thousand soldiers. Yet no Roman dared to speak of peace. Slaves were manumitted (*manumissi sunt*), a thing which had never been done before, and in this way the army was increased.

WILLIAMS, *June*, 1897.

118. Caesar, on seeing that very many of his own men were being wounded, ordered the cohorts to ascend the mountain and to raise a shout. The inhabitants (*oppidani*), greatly terrified at this (*quo facto*), called back their armed men, but were finally forced (*cogere*) to surrender. Drappes, a captive, refused food (lit. kept himself,

abstinere, from food), and so died. At the same time Lucterius, who had escaped (*profugere*) from the battle was brought back bound to Caesar.

WILLIAMS, *June*, 1898.

119. When the Romans reached Britain, the barbarians, occupying the shore, hurled javelins at them and attempted to prevent them from disembarking (*ex nāvibus ēgredi*). The Romans, not accustomed to fight on ships, were terrified by this until (*dum*) Caesar ordered some of his ships to be stationed near the exposed flank of the enemy. Then the barbarians, disturbed by the arrows and javelins, retreated slightly (*paulum pedem referre*). While the Romans were still hesitating, the eagle-bearer[1] of the tenth legion, jumping (*se proicere*) into the sea, cried out, "Leap down (*desilire*), soldiers, unless you wish to betray your eagle to the enemy!" All immediately followed him, and after a fierce conflict put the enemy to flight.

[1] Eagle-bearer—"he who carried the eagle."

YALE, *July*, 1897.

120. In his speech for the Manilian law Cicero reminded his fellow-citizens of the services rendered by Pompey when he held supreme command against the pirates who had grown so bold that they captured even large towns. "Even the very coast of Italy," said Cicero, "and the Tiber itself were not safe from the attacks of those rascals. Almost under your very eyes a fleet under the command of a consul of the Roman people was crushed. And yet under the leadership of Pompey that dangerous war was ended within a few months. He prepared for it at the end of winter, began it in the early spring, and finished it by midsummer."

YALE, *June*, 1898

Caesar, Gallic War

BOOK III

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum le- 1
gione duodecima et parte equitatus in Nantuatis, Varagros, Sedunos-
que misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine
Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod 2
iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis
mercatores ire consueverant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si 3
opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causa
conlocaret. Galba secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque com- 4
pluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidi-
busque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus
conlocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vico Vara-
grorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in 5
valle, non magna adiecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique con-
tinetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem 6
eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus
ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

2. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque 1
eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est
ex ea parte vici quam Gallis concesserat omnes noctu discessisse,
montesque qui impenderent a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et
Varagrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat ut subito Galli 2
belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent:
primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohorti- 3
bus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa
missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant; tum etiam 4
quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem de-
currerent et tela coicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum
sustineri existimabant. Accedebat quod suos ab se liberos abs- 5
tractos obsidum nomine dolebant, et Romanos non solum itinerum

causa sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere sibi persuasum habebant.

1 3. His nuntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter 2 convocato sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari interclusis itine- 3 ribus possent, prope iam desperata salute nonnullae huius modi sententiae dicebantur ut, impedimentis relictis eruptione facta, isdem 4 itineribus quibus eo pervenissent ad salutem contenderent. Maiori tamen parti placuit hoc reservato ad extremum *casum* consilio interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

1 4. Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut iis rebus quas constituissent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum 2 coicere. Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter propugnare neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium 3 ferre; sed hoc superari quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi 4 proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum ab nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci ubi constiterat relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

1 5. Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere et fossas com- 2 plere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casum, P. Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consili magni et virtutis, ad Galbam adcurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxi- 3 lium experirentur. Itaque convocatis centurionibus celeriter milites

certiores facit paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent; post dato signo ex castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

6. Quod iussi sunt faciunt ac subito omnibus portis eruptione 1
facta neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata Fortuna eos qui in spem 2
potiendorum castrorum venerant undique circumventos interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam coiciunt ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis armisque 3
exutis se intra munitiones suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod 4
saepius Fortunam temptare Galba nolebat, atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis in provinciam reverti contendit, ac nullo hoste 5
prohibente aut iter demorante incolumem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.

7. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Gal- 1
liam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. 2
P. Crassus adulescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemabat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti 3
erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti commeatusque petendi causa dimisit, quo in numero est 4
T. Terrasidius missus in Esubios, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velanius cum T. Silio in Venetos.

8. Huius est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae 1
maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu rerum nauticarum ceteros antecedunt, et in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interiectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere qui eo mari uti consuerunt habent vectigales. Ab his fit 2
initium retinendi Sili atque Velani et si quos intercipere potuerunt,

quod per eos suos se obsides quos Crasso dedissent recuperaturos
3 existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti, ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia, eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis legatis per suos principes inter se coniurant nihil nisi communi consilio acturos eundemque omnes
4 fortunae exitum esse laturos; reliquasque civitates sollicitant ut in ea libertate quam a maioribus acceperint permanere, quam Roma-
5 norum servitutem perferre malint. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta communem legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recuperare, obsides sibi remittat.

1 9. Quibus de rebus Caesar a Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligeri, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex provincia institui, nautas gu-
2 bernatoresque comparari iubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.
3 Veneti reliquaeque item civitates cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod quantum in se facinus admisissent intellegebant, legatos. quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime ea quae ad usum navium pertinent providere instituunt, hoc maiore spe quod multum natura loci confi-
4 debant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum
5 sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius
6 apud se morari posse confidebant; ac iam ut omnia contra opinionem accideren t, tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium neque eorum locorum ubi
7 bellum gesturi essent vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque aper-
8 tissimo Oceano perspiciebant. His initis consiliis oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas pos-
9 sunt cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexobios, Namnetes, Ambianos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

1 10. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi quas supra ostendimus.

sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: iniuriae reten- 2
torum equitum Romanorum, rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio
datis obsidibus, tot civitatum coniuratio, in primis ne hac parte
neglecta reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque 3
cum intellegeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum
mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura liber-
tati studere et condicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civi-
tates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum
putavit.

11. Itaque T. Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi flumini 1
Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat Remos reliquosque 2
Belgas adeat atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxilio a
Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire co-
nentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis XII et 3
magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne ex his
nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nationes coniun-
gantur. Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in 4
Venellos, Coriosolitas Lexobiosque mittit, qui eam manum disti-
nendam curet. D. Brutum adulescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, 5
quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus con-
venire iusserat, praeficit et cum primum posset in Venetos proficisci
iubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant eius modi fere situs oppidorum ut posita in extremis 1
lingulis promunturiisque neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex
alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis accidit *cotidie* semper horarum
duodenarum spatio, neque navibus, quod rursus minuente aestu
naves in vadis adflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio 2
impediebatur; ac si quando, magnitudine operis forte superati ex-
truso mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis,
suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium adpulso,
cuius rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia
seque in proxima oppida recipiebant; ibi se rursus isdem oportuni-
tatibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis 3
faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summa-
que erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope
nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

1 13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque
erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, quo
2 facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent; prorae admodum
erectae atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempesta-
3 tumque adcommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis
vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra ex pedalibus in altitu-
dinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine;
4 ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinctae; pelles pro velis alu-
taeque tenuiter confectae, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque eius
usus inscientiam sive eo, quod est magis veri simile, quod tantas
tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta
onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur.
5 Cum his navibus nostrae classi eius modi congressus erat ut una
celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret; reliqua pro loci natura, pro
6 vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora et adcommodatiora. Neque
enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitudo)
neque propter altitudinem facile telum adigebatur, et eadem de
7 causa minus commode copulis continebantur. Accedebat ut, cum
saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem fer-
rent facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius et ab aestu relictae nihil
saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus
casus erant extimescendi.

1 14. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra
tantum laborem sumi neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi
2 neque iis noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi
convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX naves eorum
paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae profectae ex
3 portu nostris adversae constiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi
praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae
naves erant attributae, constabat quid agerent aut quam rationem
4 pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant;
turribus autem excitatis tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris
navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela
5 adigi possent et missa a Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno
usui res praeparata ab nostris, falces praeacutae insertae adfixae-
6 que longuriis non absimili forma muralium falcium. His cum funes

qui antemnas ad malos destinabant comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. Quibus praecisis antem- 7
nae necessario concidebant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, 8
qua nostri milites facile superabant atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum pàulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac loca supe- 9
riora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Deiectis, ut diximus, antemnis, cum singulas binae ac ternae 1
naves circumsisterent, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, 2
expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contendebant. Ac iam conversis in 3
eam partem navibus quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem 4
res ad negotium conficiendum maximae fuit oportunitati: nam singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

16. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae con- 1
fectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventus, omnes etiam gravioris 2
aetatis, in quibus aliquid consili aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum navium quod ubique fuerat unum in locum coëgerant; quibus 3
amissis reliqui neque quo se reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida defenderent habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo dili- 4
gentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris ius legatorum conservaretur. Itaque omni senatu necato reliquos sub corona vendidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum iis 1
copiis quas a Caesare acceperat in fines Venellorum pervenit. His 2
praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenebat earum omnium civitatum quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat; atque his paucis diebus Aulerci, Eburovices, Lexobiique 3
senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas

clauserunt seque cum Viridovice coniunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerat, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agri cultura et
5 cotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duorum milium spatio consedisset cotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut iam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veni-
6 ret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit ut iam ad vallum castrorum
7 hostes accedere auderent. Id ea de causa faciebat quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente qui summam imperi teneret, nisi aequo loco aut oportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum non existimabat.

1 **18.** Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex iis quos auxili causa secum habebat.
2 Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque persuadet uti ad hostes
3 transeat, et quid fieri velit edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum proponit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Ve-
4 netis prematur docet; neque longius abesse quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat et ad Caesarem auxili
5 ferendi causa proficiscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes occasionem negoti bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad
6 castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt.
7 His rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa laeti ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

1 **19.** Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spati ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, exani-
2 matique pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferebant onera, subito

duabus portis eruptionem fieri iubet. Factum est oportunitate loci, 3
hostium inscientia ac defatigatione, virtute militum et superiorum
pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum
ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus 4
milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; re-
liquos equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt.
Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria 5
Caesar est certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio
dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac 6
promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates
perferendas mens eorum est.

20. Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquitaniam pervenis- 1
set, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multi-
tudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intel-
legeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L.
Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque
unde L. Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non
mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. Itaque re 2
frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis prae-
terea viris fortibus Tolosa, Carcasone, Narbone, quae sunt civitates
Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in
Sotiatium fines exercitum introduxit. Cuius adventu cognito Sotiates 3
magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere
agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt; de- 4
inde equitatu suo pulso atque insequentibus nostris, subito pede-
stres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis conlocaverant, ostenderunt.
Hi nostros disiectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiates superioribus 1
victoriis freti in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam puta-
rent; nostri autem quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus
adulescentulo duce efficere possent perspici cuperent; tandem con-
fecti vulneribus hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero in- 2
terfecto Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatium oppugnare coepit.
Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias erup- 3
tione temptata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis, cuius rei
sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud

eos aerariae secturaeque sunt, ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere iussi, faciunt.

1 **22.** Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperi tenebat, cum DC de-
2 votis, quos illi soldurios appellant,—quorum haec est condicio uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruantur quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum
3 una ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam qui, eo interfecto cuius se amicitiae
4 devovisset, mortem recusaret,—cum his Adiatunnus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur a Crasso impetravit.

1 **23.** Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et
2 Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis diebus quibus eo ventum erat expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoqueversus dimittere, coniurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt.
3 Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae
4 finitimae Aquitaniae; inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine
5 bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur qui una cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris
6 habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere,
7 castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidi relinquere, ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri,—non
8 cunctandum existimavit quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

1 **24.** Prima luce productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie instituta,

auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostes consili caperent exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli gloriam 2
paucitatemque nostrorum se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae 3
Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis iam firmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato, ab du- 4
cibus productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re 5
perspecta Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur exspectari diutius non oportere quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis coniectis de- 1
fensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliaresque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent; cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites circumitis hostium castris Crasso renuntia- 2
verunt non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

26. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus ut magnis praemiis 1
pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illi, 2
ut erat imperatum, eductis iis cohortibus quae praesidio castris relictae intritae ab labore erant et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas quas diximus munitiones pervenerunt, atque his prorutis prius in hostium castris constiterunt quam 3
plane ab his videri aut quid rei gereretur cognosci posset. Tum 4
vero clamore ab ea parte audito nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, 5
se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere contenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex milium L numero, 6
quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recepit.

1 27. Hac audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni,
2 Sibuzates, Cocosates; paucae ultimae nationes anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

1 28. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta iam aestas erat, tamen quod omni Gallia pacata Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum duxit; qui longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt.
2 Nam quod intellegebant maximas nationes quae proelio contendissent pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes
3 habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt.
4 Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt eosque in silvas reppulerunt, et compluribus interfectis longius impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

1 29. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem
2 conlocabat et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum iam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, eius modi sunt tempestates consecutae uti opus necessario intermitteretur et continuatione imbrium diutius sub
3 pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexobiisque, reliquis item in civitatibus quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis conlocavit.

Caesar, Gallic War

BOOK IV

1. Ea quae secuta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeio, M. 1
Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum
multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt non longe a mari,
quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit quod ab Suebis com- 2
plures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agri cultura prohibe-
bantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima 3
Germanorum omnium. Hi c pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus 4
quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa suis ex finibus
educunt. Reliqui, qui domi remanserunt, se atque illos alunt; hi 5
rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic 6
neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed 7
privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno re-
manere uno in loco colendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, 8
sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in
venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et 9
libertate vitae, cum a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina adsuefacti
nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani cor-
porum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudi- 10
nem adduxerunt ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles
haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis
pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo ut quae bello ceperint quibus 1
vendant habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent.
Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque im- 2
penso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt
apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione
summi ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis 3
desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio
adsuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque 4
eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephip-
piis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum 5
quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non 6

patiuntur, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

1 3. Publice maximam putant esse laudem quam latissime ab suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum
2 suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte ab Suebis cir-
3 citer milia passum c agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum. Hi paulo, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, *sunt* ceteris humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis
4 sunt moribus adsuefacti. Hos cum Suebi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

1 4. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati
2 ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad
3 utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia, vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis adventu perterriti ex iis aedificiis quae trans flumen habuerant demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis
4 Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter
5 custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt, atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque
6 Menapios oppresserunt; qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remi-
7 graverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum quae citra Rhenum erat certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

1 5. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque
2 rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere

cogant, et quid quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint pronuntiare cogat. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus 3 consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio paenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

6. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, 1 maturius quam consueverat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum 2 venisset, ea quae fore suspicatus erat facta cognovit: missas lega- 3 tiones ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque quae postulassent ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in 4 fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea quae cogno- 5 verat dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

7. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea 1 loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A qui- 2 bus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores populo Romano 3 bellum inferre neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen 4 dicere: venisse se invitos, eiectos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere quos armis possederint; sese unis Suebis con- 5 cedere, quibus ne di quidem immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem quem non superare possint.

8. Ad haec quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit 1 orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse qui suos fines tueri non potuerint 2 alienos occupare, neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in 3 Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sue-

borum iniuriis querantur et ab se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

1 9. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deliberata post
diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros; interea ne propius se castra
2 moveret petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse
3 dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot
diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans
Mosam missam; hos exspectari equites atque eius rei causa moram
interponi arbitrabatur.

1 10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum,
2 et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta quae appellatur Vacalus, insulam
efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo milibus passuum LXXX in
3 Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes in-
colunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequano-
4 rum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur, et
ubi Oceano adpropinquat, in plures diffluit partes multis ingenti-
busque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque
5 nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium
vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

1 11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus abes-
set, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere
2 congressi magnopere ne longius progrederetur orabant. Cum id
non impetrassent, petebant uti ad eos equites qui agmen antecessis-
sent praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem
3 faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus
sibi iureiurando fidem fecisset, ea condicione quae a Caesare ferre-
tur se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spa-
4 tium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur,
ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum qui abessent reverterentur;
tamen sese non longius milibus passuum IV aquationis causa pro-
5 cessurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi con-
6 venirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos
qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostes
proelio lacesserent; et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent quoad ipse
cum exercitu propius accessisset.

1 12. At hostes ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum

erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius DCCC equites haberent, quod ii qui frumentandi causa erant trans Mosam profecti nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus iis resistentibus, 2 consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis compluribusque nostris deiectis, reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt ut non prius fuga desisterent quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris 3 interficiuntur LXXIV, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplis- 4 simo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab 5 hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit; ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit fortissime restitit; cum circumventus 6 multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos 1 neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis qui per dolum atque insidias petita pace ultro bellum intulissent; exspectare vero, 2 dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat, et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum 3 iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spati dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communi- 4 cato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, oportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes, omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt; simul, ut dicebatur, sui pur- 5 gandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus illos reti- 6 neri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

14. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter VIII milium itinere confecto, 1 prius ad hostium castra pervenit quam quid ageretur Germani sen-

tire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consili habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere an castra defendere an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra inruperunt. Quo loco qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

15. Germani post tergum clamore audito cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX milium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar iis quos in castris retinuerat discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset qui postularent eos qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperi aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis

ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus rei publicae 6
prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi *ad*
auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse 7
nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti
opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium 8
magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Caesar his de causis quas commemoravi Rhenum transire 1
decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat.
Itaque etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter 2
latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi
contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat.
Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum 3
ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum
duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in 4
flumen defixerat festucisque adegerat,—non sublicae modo derecte
ad perpendiculum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam
fluminis procumberent,—his item contraria duo ad eundem modum 5
iuncta intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte contra vim
atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper 6
bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura
distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis 7
firmitudo atque ea rerum natura ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius inligata tenerentur. Haec derecta materia iniecta 8
contexebantur ac longuriis cratibusque consternebantur; ac nihilo 9
setius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur,
quae pro ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim fluminis
exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum 10
trunci sive naves deiciendi operis causa essent a barbaris missae, his
defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

18. Diebus decem quibus materia coepta erat comportari omni 1
opere effecto exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem 2

3 pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondet obsidesque
4 ad se adduci iubet. At Sugambri ex eo tempore quo pons institui coeptus est fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

1 19. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus si ab Suebis premerentur,
2 haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes qui arma ferre possent unum in
3 locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suebi obtinerent; hic Romanorum adventum exspectare
4 atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rebus iis confectis quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino XVIII trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

1 20. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis
2 hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant in-
3 cognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones
4 quae sunt contra Gallias notum est. Itaque evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorem navium multitudinem idonei portus reperire poterat.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum 1
esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic 2
mandat ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur.
Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat 3
brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique ex finiti- 4
mis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum
effecerat classem, iubet convenire. Interim consilio eius cognito et 5
per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus eius insulae
civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt qui polliceantur obsides dare
atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis liberali- 6
ter pollicitus hortatusque ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum
remittit, et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis 7
regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et
quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur cuiusque auctoritas in his
regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat quas possit 8
adeat civitates, horteturque ut populi Romani fidem sequantur,
seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regioni- 9
bus omnibus quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui ex navi egredi ac
se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem rever-
titur quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, 1
ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt qui se de super-
ioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae
consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea
quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opor- 2
tune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere
volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat
neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus
adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis 3
coactis constratisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legio-
nes existimabat, quidquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, id
quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant XVIII 4
onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco a milibus passuum VIII vento tene-
bantur quo minus in eundem portum venire possent; has equitibus
distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Auruncu- 5

leio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum a
6 quibus ad eum legati non venerant ducendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur portum tenere iussit.

1 **23.** His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia naves solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum
2 progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas
3 hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur uti ex locis superiori-
4 bus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent ad
5 horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognovisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio maximeque ut maritimae res postularent (ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administra-
6 rentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter milia passuum VII ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

1 **24.** At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reli-
2 quis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus
3 erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis, audacter tela
4 coicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant utebantur.

1 **25.** Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expeditior,

paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac submoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere 2 tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulerunt. At nostris militibus cunctantibus maxime propter alti- 3 tudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat obtestatus deos ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum voce magna dixis- 4 set, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum 5 nostri cohortati inter se ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexis- 6 sent, subsecuti hostibus adpropinquarunt.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque 1 ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi quibuscumque signis occurrerat se adgregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero notis omnibus 2 vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circum- 3 sistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coiciebant. Quod 4 cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat his subsidia submittebat. Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, 5 suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt; neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, 1 statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; obsides daturos quaeque imperasset sese facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his 2 legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, 3 cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant; tum proelio facto remiserunt. In petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et 4

propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis post diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum adpropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno suo cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

29. Eadem nocte accidit ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas adflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt; et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea quae iusserat Caesar facienda convenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum et equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent,—quae hoc erant etiam angustiora quod sine impedimentis

Caesar legiones transportaverat,—optimum factu esse duxerunt, 2
rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in
hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere et suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt. 3

31. At Caesar etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et 1
ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo quod obsides dare intermiserant,
fore id quod accidit suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia 2
comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat, et quae gravissime adflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti comparari iubebat. Itaque cum summo studio a mili- 3
tibus administraretur, XII navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari *satis* commode posset effecit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum 1
missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem maiorem quam consuetudo ferret in ea parte videri quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar 2
id quod erat suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consili, cohortes quae in stationibus erant secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris pro- 3
cessisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela coici animadvertit. Nam quod 4
omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito 5
adorti, paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes 1
perequitant et tela coiciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.

2 Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus con-
locant ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad
3 suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem pe-
ditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione
efficiunt uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et
brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere et in iugo in-
sistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

1 34. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris [novitate pugnae] tempore
oportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventu hostes
2 constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad laces-
sendum hostem et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus
arbitratus, suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in ca-
3 stra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occu-
4 patis, *hostes* qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt
continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris
5 continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nun-
tios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum
suis praedicaverunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpe-
tuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent,
6 demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus
equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

1 35. Caesar etsi idem quod superioribus diebus acciderat fore
videbat,—ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent,
—tamen nactus equites circiter xxx, quos Commius Atrebas, de
quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro
2 castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum
3 impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos
tanto spatio secuti quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt,
complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis
incensis se in castra receperunt.

1 36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace
2 venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperaverat
duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die
aequinocti infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non
3 existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam
noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem per-

venerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem quos reliqui portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt. 4

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia VI convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus. 1 2 3 4

38. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus quas ex Britannia reduxerat in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum quo se reciperent non haberent (quo perfugio superiore anno erant usi), omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At P. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum XX supplicatio ab senatu decreta est. 1 2 3 4 5

Nepos, Alcibiades

1. Alcibiades, Cliniae filius, Atheniensis. In hoc natura quid efficere possit videtur experta. Constat enim inter omnes qui de eo memoriae prodiderunt, nihil illo fuisse excellentius vel in vitiis vel in virtutibus. Natus in amplissima civitate summo genere, omnium aetatis suae multo formosissimus, dives; ad omnes res aptus consilique plenus (namque imperator fuit summus et mari et 1 2

terra); disertus, ut in primis dicendo valeret, quod tanta erat com-
3 mendatio oris atque orationis ut nemo ei posset resistere; cum tempus posceret, laboriosus, patiens; liberalis, splendidus non minus in vita quam victu; affabilis, blandus, temporibus callidissime serviens:
4 idem, simul ac se remiserat neque causa suberat quare animi laborem perferret, luxuriosus, dissolutus, libidinosus, intemperans reperiebatur, ut omnes admirarentur in uno homine tantam esse dissimilitudinem tamque diversam naturam.

1 2. Educatus est in domo Pericli (privignus enim eius fuisse dicitur), eruditus a Socrate. Socerum habuit Hipponicum, omnium Graeca lingua loquentium ditissimum, ut, si ipse fingere vellet, neque plura bona eminisci neque maiora posset consequi quam vel natura vel fortuna tribuerat.

1 3. Bello Peloponnesio huius consilio atque auctoritate Athe-
2 nienses bellum Syracusanis indixerunt. Ad quod gerendum ipse dux delectus est, duo praeterea collegae dati, Nicia et Lamachus. Id cum appararetur, prius quam classis exiret, accidit ut una nocte omnes Hermae qui in oppido erant Athenis deicerentur praeter unum, qui ante ianuam erat Andocidi (itaque ille postea Mercurius
3 Andocidi vocitatus est). Hoc cum appareret non sine magna multorum consensione esse factum, quae non ad privatam, sed ad publicam rem pertineret, magnus multitudini timor est iniectus ne qua repentina vis in civitate exsisteret quae libertatem opprimeret
4 populi. Hoc maxime convenire in Alcibiadem videbatur quod et potentior et maior quam privatus existimabatur: multos enim libe-
5 ralitate devinxerat, plures etiam opera forensi suos reddiderat. Qua re fiebat ut omnium oculos, quotienscumque in publicum prodisset, ad se converteret neque ei par quisquam in civitate poneretur. Itaque non solum spem in eo habebant maximam, sed etiam timorem,
6 quod et obesse plurimum et prodesse poterat. Aspergebatur etiam infamia quod in domo sua facere mysteria dicebatur (quod nefas erat more Atheniensium) idque non ad religionem, sed ad coniurationem pertinere existimabatur.

1 4. Hoc crimine in contione ab inimicis compellabatur. Sed instabat tempus ad bellum proficiscendi. Id ille intuens neque ignorans civium suorum consuetudinem postulabat, si quid de se

agi vellent, potius de praesente quaestio haberetur quam absens invidiae crimine accusaretur. Inimici vero eius quiescendum in 2
praesenti, quia noceri *ei* non posse intellegebant, et illud tempus exspectandum decreverunt quo *classis* exisset, ut absentem aggrederentur, itaque fecerunt. Nam postquam in Siciliam eum per- 3
venisse crediderunt, absentem quod sacra violasset reum fecerunt. Qua de re cum ei nuntius a magistratu in Siciliam missus esset, ut domum ad causam dicendam rediret, essetque in magna spe provinciae bene administrandae, non parere noluit et in triremem quae ad eum erat deportandum missa ascendit. Hac Thurios in 4
Italiam pervectus, multa secum reputans de immoderata civium suorum licentia crudelitateque erga nobiles, utilissimum ratus impendentem evitare tempestatem, clam se ab custodibus subduxit et inde primum Elidem, dein Thebas venit. Postquam autem se ca- 5
pitis damnatum bonis publicatis audivit, et, id quod *numquam antea* usu venerat, Eumolpidas sacerdotes a populo coactos ut se devoverent, eiusque devotionis quo testatior esset memoria, exemplum in pila lapidea incisum esse positum in publico, Lacedaemonem demigravit. Ibi, ut ipse praedicare consuerat, non adversus patriam, 6
sed inimicos suos bellum gessit, qui eidem hostes essent civitati: nam cum intellegerent se plurimum prodesse posse rei publicae, ex ea eiecisse plusque irae suae quam utilitati communi paruisse. Ita- 7
que huius consilio Lacedaemonii cum Perse rege amicitiam fecerunt, dein Deceleam in Attica munierunt praesidioque ibi perpetuo posito in obsidione Athenas tenuerunt. Eiusdem opera Ioniam a societate averterunt Atheniensium. Quo facto multo superiores bello esse coeperunt.

5. Neque vero his rebus tam amici Alcibiadi sunt facti quam ti- 1
more ab eo alienati. Nam cum acerrimi viri praestantem prudentiam in omnibus rebus cognoscerent pertimuerunt ne caritate patriae ductus aliquando ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in gratiam rediret. Itaque tempus eius interficiendi quaerere instituerunt. Id Alci- 2
biades diutius celari non potuit: erat enim ea sagacitate ut decipi non posset, praesertim cum animum attendisset ad cavendum. Itaque ad Tissaphernem, praefectum regis Darii, se contulit. Cuius cum in intimam amicitiam pervenisset, et Atheniensium male gestis 3

in Sicilia rebus opes senescere, contra Lacedaemoniorum crescere videret, initio cum Pisandro praetore, qui apud Samum exercitum habebat, per internuntios colloquitur et de reditu suo facit mentionem. *Is* erat enim eodem quo Alcibiades sensu, populi potentiae
4 non amicus et optimatium fautor. Ab hoc destitutus primum per Thrasybulum, Lyci filium, ab exercitu recipitur praetorque fit apud Samum, post suffragante Theramene populi scito restituitur parique absens imperio praeficitur simul cum Thrasybulo et Theramene.
5 Horum in imperio tanta commutatio rerum facta est ut Lacedaemonii, qui paulo ante victores viguerant, perterriti pacem peterent. Victi enim erant quinque proeliis terrestribus, tribus navalibus, in quibus ducentas naves triremes amiserant quae captae in hostium
6 venerant potestatem. Alcibiades simul cum collegis receperat Ioniam, Hellespontum, multas praeterea urbes Graecas quae in ora sitae sunt Thraeciae, quarum expugnarant complures, in eis Byzantium, neque minus multas consilio ad amicitiam adiunxerant quod
7 in captos clementia fuerant usi. Ita praeda onusti, locupletato exercitu, maximis rebus gestis Athenas venerunt.

1 **6.** His cum obviam universa civitas in Piraeum descendisset, tanta fuit omnium exspectatio visendi Alcibiadis ut ad eius trire-
2 mem vulgus conflueret proinde ac si solus advenisset. Sic enim populo erat persuasum et adversas superiores et praesentes secundas res accidisse eius opera. Itaque et *exercitum in* Sicilia amissum et Lacedaemoniorum victorias culpae suae tribuebant, quod talem virum e civitate expulissent. Neque id sine causa arbitrari videbantur. Nam postquam exercitui praeesse coeperat, neque
3 terra neque mari hostes pares esse potuerant. Hic ut e navi egressus est, quamquam Theramenes et Thrasybulus eisdem rebus praefuerant simulque venerant in Piraeum, tamen unum omnes illum prosequebantur, et, id quod numquam antea usu venerat nisi Olympiae victoribus, coronis laureis taeniisque vulgo donabatur. Ille lacrimans talem benivolentiam civium suorum accipiebat, remini-
4 scens pristini temporis acerbitatem. Postquam *in* astu venit, contione advocata sic verba fecit ut nemo tam ferus fuerit quin eius casui illacrimarit inimicumque iis se ostenderit quorum opera patria pulsus fuerat, proinde ac si alius populus, non ille ipse qui tum fle-

bat, cum sacrilegi damnasset. Restituta ergo huic sunt publice bona, eidemque illi Eumolpidae sacerdotes rursus resacrare sunt coacti qui eum devoverant, pilaeque illae in quibus devotio fuerat scripta in mare praecipitatae.

7. Haec Alcibiadi laetitia non nimis fuit diuturna. Nam cum ei omnes essent honores decreti totaque res publica domi bellique tradita ut unius arbitrio gereretur, et ipse postulasset ut duo sibi collegae darentur, Thrasybulus et Adimantus, neque id negatum esset, classe in Asiam profectus quod apud Cymen minus ex sententia rem gesserat, in invidiam recidit: nihil enim eum non efficere posse ducebant. Ex quo fiebat ut omnia minus prospere gesta culpae tribuerent, cum aut eum neglegenter aut malitiose fecisse loquerentur, sicut tum accidit: nam corruptum a rege capere Cymen noluisse arguebant. Itaque huic maxime putamus malo fuisse nimiam opinionem ingeni atque virtutis: timebatur enim non minus quam diligebatur, ne secunda fortuna magnisque opibus elatus tyrannidem concupisceret. Quibus rebus factum est ut absenti magistratum abrogarent et alium in eius locum substituerent. Id ille ut audivit, domum reverti noluit et se Pactyen contulit ibique tria castella communiit, Ornos, Bizanthen, Neontichos, manuque collecta primus Graecae civitatis in Thraeciam introiit, gloriosius existimans barbarorum praeda locupletari quam Graiorum. Qua ex re creverat cum fama tum opibus, magnamque amicitiam sibi cum quibusdam regibus Thraeciae pepererat.

8. Neque tamen a caritate patriae potuit recedere. Nam cum apud Aegos flumen Philocles, praetor Atheniensium, classem constituisset suam neque longe abesset Lysander, praetor Lacedaemoniorum, qui in eo erat occupatus ut bellum quam diutissime duceret, quod ipsis pecunia a rege suppeditabatur, contra Atheniensibus exhaustis praeter arma et naves nihil erat super, Alcibiades ad exercitum venit Atheniensium ibique praesente vulgo agere coepit: si vellent, se coacturum Lysandrum dimicare aut pacem petere [spopondit]; Lacedaemonios eo nolle classe confligere quod pedestribus copiis plus quam navibus valerent; sibi autem esse facile Seuthem, regem Thraecum, adducere ut eum terra depelleret: quo facto necessario aut classe conflicturum aut bellum compositurum.

4 Id etsi vere dictum Philocles animadvertebat, tamen postulata facere noluit, quod sentiebat se Alcibiade recepto nullius momenti apud exercitum futurum, et, si quid secundi evenisset, nullam in ea re suam partem fore, contra ea, si quid adversi accidisset, se unum
5 eius delicti futurum reum. Ab hoc discedens Alcibiades, "Quoniam," inquit, "victoriae patriae repugnas, illud moneo, *ne* iuxta hostem castra habeas nautica: periculum est enim ne immodestia militum vestrorum occasio detur Lysandro vestri opprimendi exer-
6 citus." Neque ea res illum fefellit. Nam Lysander, cum per speculatores comperisset vulgum Atheniensium in terram praedatum exisse navesque paene inanes relictas, tempus rei gerendae non dimisit eoque impetu bellum totum delevit.

1 9. At Alcibiades, victis Atheniensibus non satis tuta eadem loca sibi arbitrans, penitus in Thraeciam se supra Propontidem abdidit,
2 sperans ibi facillime suam fortunam occuli posse. Falso. Nam Thraeces, postquam eum cum magna pecunia venisse senserunt, insidias fecerunt eaque quae apportarat abstulerunt, ipsum capere
3 non potuerunt. Ille cernens nullum locum sibi tutum in Graecia propter potentiam Lacedaemoniorum ad Pharnabazum in Asiam transiit; quem quidem adeo sua cepit humanitate ut eum nemo in amicitia antecederet. Namque ei Grynium dederat, in Phrygia ca-
4 strum, ex quo quinquagena talenta vectigalis capiebat. Qua fortuna Alcibiades non erat contentus, neque Athenas victas Lacedaemoniis servire poterat pati. Itaque ad patriam liberandam omni ferebatur
5 cogitatione. Sed videbat id sine rege Perse non posse fieri, ideoque eum amicum sibi cupiebat adiungi, neque dubitabat facile se consecuturum si modo eius conveniundi habuisset potestatem. Nam Cyrum fratrem ei bellum clam parare Lacedaemoniis adiuvantibus sciebat: id si aperuisset, magnam se initurum gratiam videbat.

1 10. Hoc cum moliretur peteretque a Pharnabazo ut ad regem mitteretur, eodem tempore Critias ceterique tyranni Atheniensium certos homines ad Lysandrum in Asiam miserant qui eum certiorem facerent, nisi Alcibiadem sustulisset, nihil earum rerum fore ratum quas ipse Athenis constituisset: quare, si suas res gestas manere vel-
2 let, illum persequeretur. His Laco rebus commotus statuit accuratius sibi agendum cum Pharnabazo. Huic ergo renuntiat quae regi

cum Lacedaemoniis convenissent, nisi Alcibiadem vivum aut mortuum sibi tradidisset. Non tulit hoc satrapes et violare clementiam 3
quam regis opes minui maluit. Itaque misit Susamithren et Bagaeum ad Alcibiadem interficiendum cum ille esset in Phrygia iterque ad regem compararet. Missi clam vicinitati in qua tum Alcibiades 4
erat dant negotium ut eum interficiant. Illi cum ferro aggredi non auderent, noctu ligna contulerunt circa casam eam in qua quiescebat, eaque succenderunt, ut incendio conficerent quem manu superari posse diffidebant. Ille autem ut sonitu flammae est excitatus, 5
etsi gladius ei erat subductus, familiaris sui subalare telum eripuit. Namque erat cum eo quidam ex Arcadia hospes, qui numquam discedere voluerat. Hunc sequi se iubet et id quod in praesentia vestimentorum fuit arripit. His in ignem coniectis flammae vim transiit. Quem ut barbari incendium effugisse viderunt, telis eminus 6
missis interfecerunt caputque eius ad Pharnabazum rettulerunt. At mulier, quae cum eo vivere consuerat, muliebri sua veste contectum aedifici incendio mortuum cremavit quod ad vivum interimendum erat comparatum. Sic Alcibiades annos circiter quadraginta natus diem obiit supremum.

11. Hunc infamatum a plerisque tres gravissimi historici summis 1
laudibus extulerunt: Thucydides, qui eiusdem aetatis fuit, Theopompus, post aliquanto natus, et Timaeus: qui quidem duo maledicentissimi nescio quo modo in illo uno laudando consentiunt. Namque ea quae supra scripsimus de eo praedicarunt atque hoc 2
amplius: cum Athenis, splendidissima civitate, natus esset, omnes splendore ac dignitate superasse vitae; postquam inde expulsus 3
Thebas venerit, adeo studiis eorum inservisse ut nemo eum labore corporisque viribus posset aequiperare (omnes enim Boeoti magis firmitati corporis quam ingeni acumini serviunt); eundem apud Lacedaemonios, quorum moribus summa virtus in patientia pone- 4
batur, sic duritiae se dedisse ut parsimonia victus atque cultus omnes Lacedaemonios vinceret; venisse ad Persas, apud quos sum- 5
ma laus esset fortiter venari, luxuriose vivere; horum sic imitatum consuetudinem ut illi ipsi eum in his maxime admirarentur. Quibus 6
rebus effecisse ut, apud quoscumque esset, princeps poneretur habereturque carissimus. Sed satis de hoc: reliquos ordiamur.

Nepos, Hannibal

1 1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. Si verum est quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit, non est infitiandum Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia quanto populus Romanus antecedat fortitudine
2 cunctas nationes. Nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur superare potuisse. Sed multorum obtrectatio devicit unius virtutem.
3 Hic autem velut hereditate relictum odium paternum erga Romanos sic conservavit ut prius animam quam id deposuerit, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et alienarum opum indigeret, numquam destiterit animo bellare cum Romanis.

1 2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Romanis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit. Hunc tanta cupiditate incendit bellandi ut usque a rubro mari arma
2 conatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum legati venissent Romani, qui de eius voluntate explorarent darentque operam consiliis clandestinis ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi adducerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptus alia atque antea sentiret, neque id frustra fecissent idque Hannibal comperisset seque ab interioribus consiliis
3 segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique cum multa de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adiunxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar puerulo me, utpote non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens Karthagine Iovi
4 optimo maximo hostias immolavit. Quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me vellemne secum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accepissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitaret ducere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'si mihi fidem quam postulo dederis.' Simul me ad aram adduxit apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque ceteris remotis tenentem iurare iussit numquam me
5 in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Id ego iusiurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita conservavi ut nemini dubium esse debeat
6 quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus. Quare si quid

amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris si me celaris; cum quidem bellum parabis, te ipsum frustraberis si non me in eo principem posueris."

3. Hac igitur qua diximus aetate cum patre in Hispaniam pro- 1
fectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperatore suffecto, equitatui omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperi ad eum detulit. Id Karthaginem delatum publice comprobatum est. Sic Hannibal minor quinque et viginti annis 2
natus imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit, Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit, tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, 3
alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit. *Ut* saltum Pyrenaeum transiit, quacumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis conflixit; neminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpes posteaquam venit, qua Italiam ab Gallia se- 4
iungunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpicos conantes prohibere transitu concidit, loca patefecit, itinera muniit, effecit ut ea elephantus ornatus ire posset qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. Hac copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

4. Conflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione con- 1
sule eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eodem Clastidi apud Padum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. Tertio idem Scipio 2
cum collega Ti. Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. Cum iis manum conseruit, utrosque profligavit. Inde per Ligures Appenninum transiit, petens Etruriam. Hoc *in* itinere adeo gravi 3
morbo afficitur oculorum ut postea numquam dextro aeque bene usus sit. Qua valetudine cum etiamnum premeretur lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam 4
pervenit. Ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paulum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea consulares, in eis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

1 5. Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus, nullo resistente, in propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. Cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator
2 Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se obiecit. Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba. Namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispalatam immisit. Quo repentino visu obiecto tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum ut egredi
3 extra vallum nemo sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio, dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Ti. Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Marcellum, quinquiens consulem, apud
4 Venusiam pari modo interfecit. Longum est omnia enumerare proelia. Quare hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quo intellegi possit quantus ille fuerit; quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

1 6. Hinc invictus patriam defensum revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius *Scipionis*, quem ipse primo apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat.
2 Cum hoc exhaustis iam patriae facultatibus cupivit impraesentiarum bellum componere, quo valentior postea congrederetur.
3 Inde colloquium convenit, condiciones non convenerunt. Post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem conflixit; pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumetum pervenit,
4 quod abest ab Zama circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati sunt ei; quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrumeti reliquos e fuga collegit, novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit.

1 7. Cum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. Ille nihilo setius exercitui postea praefuit resque in Africa gessit [itemque Mago frater eius]
2 usque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurelium consules. His enim magistra-

tibus legati Karthaginienses Romam venerunt qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agerent quod cum iis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos donarent simulque peterent ut obsides eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. His ex senatus consulto responsum est: munus eorum gratum acceptumque esse; obsides, quo loco rogarent, futuros; captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano, etiamnum cum imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem eius Magonem. Hoc responso Karthaginienses cognito Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. Huc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam imperator fuerat anno secundo et vicesimo: ut enim Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. In eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bello. Namque effecit ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset quae in aerario reponeretur. Deinde [anno post praeturam] M. Claudio L. Furio consulibus Roma legati Karthaginem venerunt. Hos Hannibal ratus sui exposcendi gratia missos, priusquam iis senatus daretur, navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum perfugit. Hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas quae eum comprehenderent, si possent consequi, miserunt, bona eius publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exulem iudicarunt.

8. At Hannibal anno quarto postquam domo profugerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeorum, si forte Karthaginienses ad bellum inducere posset Antiochi spe fiduciaque, cui iam persuaserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. Huc Magonem fratrem excivit. Id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eadem, qua fratrem, absentem affecerunt poena. Illi desperatis rebus cum solvissent naves ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. De Magonis interitu duplex memoria prodita est: namque alii naufragio, alii a servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquerunt. Antiochus autem si tam in gerendo bello consiliis eius parere voluisset quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam *in* Thermopylis de summa imperi dimicasset. Quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat,

4 tamen nulla deseruit in re. Praefuit paucis navibus quas ex Syria iussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum classem in Pamphylio mari conflixit. *In* quo cum multitudine adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse quo cornu rem gessit fuit superior.

1 9. Antiocho fugato verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi,
2 quo se conferret, consideraret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus *in* magno se fore periculo, nisi quid providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium: magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de
3 qua sciebat exisse famam. Itaque capit tale consilium. Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. His in errorem inductis statuas aëneas quas secum portabat omni sua pecunia complet easque in
4 propatulo domi abicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret *sua* secumque duceret.

1 10. Sic conservatis suis rebus omnibus Poenus illusis Cretensibus ad Prusiam in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quicquam egit quam regem armavit et
2 exacuit adversus Romanos. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat ceteros reges, adiungebat bellicosas nationes. Dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus rex Eumenes, Romanis
3 amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et terra; sed utrobique Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem. Quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi, quem si removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore arbitrabatur. Ad hunc interficiundum
4 talem iniit rationem. Classe paucis diebus erant decreturi. Superabatur navium multitudine; dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis. Imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes
5 vivas colligi easque in vasa fictilia conici. Harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso quo facturus erat navale proelium classiarios convocat iisque praecipit omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant se defendere. Id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos.
6 Rex autem in qua nave veheretur ut scirent se facturum: quem

si aut cepissent aut interfecissent, magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.

11. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proe- 1
lium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha cum caduceo mittit. Qui ubi ad naves ad- 2
versariorum pervenit epistulamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius, ducis nave declarata suis, eodem unde erat egressus se recepit. At Eumenes 3
soluta epistula nihil in ea repperit nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent. Cuius *rei* etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiebat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. Horum in con- 4
cursu Bithyni Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petiit, quam consecutus non esset nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamenae 5
naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexe- 6
runt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitarent non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque 7
tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

12. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit casu ut legati Prusiae 1
Romae apud T. Quintium Flamininum consularem cenarent, atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flamininus senatui detulit. Patres con- 2
scripti, qui Hannibale vivo numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in eis Flamininum, qui ab rege peterent ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibique dederet. His Prusia negare ausus non est; illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri 3
postularent, quod adversus ius hospiti esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset facile inventuros. Hannibal enim

uno loco se tenebat, in castello quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic aedificarat ut in omnibus partibus aedifici exitus haberet,
4 scilicet verens ne usu veniret quod accidit. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei ut omnes fores aedifici circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret num eodem modo undique ob-
5 sideretur. Puer cum celeriter quid vidisset renuntiasset, omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuerat, sumpsit.

1 **13.** Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus laboribus, anno acquievit septuagesimo. Quibus consulibus interierit, non convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudio Marcello Q. Fabio Labeone consulibus mortuum in annali suo scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemilio Paulo Cn. Baebio Tamphilo, Sulpicius autem Blitho P.
2 Cornelio Cethego M. Baebio Tamphilo. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nonnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri sunt, Graeco sermone confecti, in eis ad Rhodios
3 de Cn. Manli Volsonis in Asia rebus gestis. Huius belli gesta multi memoriae prodiderunt, sed ex eis duo, qui cum eo in castris fuerunt simulque vixerunt, quamdiu fortuna passa est, Silenus et Sosylus Lacedaemonius. Atque hoc Sosylo Hannibal litterarum Graecarum usus est doctore.

Sed nos tempus est huius libri facere finem et Romanorum explicare imperatores, quo facilius, collatis utrorumque factis, qui viri praeferendi sint possit iudicari.

Cicero, Manilian Law

1 **1.** Quamquam mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multo iucundissimus, hic autem locus ad agendum amplissimus, ad dicendum ornatissimus est visus, Quirites, tamen hoc aditu laudis, qui semper optimo cuique maxime patuit, non mea me voluntas adhuc,

sed vitae meae rationes ab ineunte aetate susceptae prohibuerunt. Nam cum antea per aetatem nondum huius auctoritatem loci attingere auderem, statueremque nihil huc nisi perfectum ingenio, elaboratum industria afferri oportere, omne meum tempus amicorum temporibus transmittendum putavi. Ita neque hic locus vacuus umquam fuit ab iis qui vestram causam defenderent, et meus labor, in privatorum periculis caste integreque versatus, ex vestro iudicio fructum est amplissimum consecutus. Nam cum propter dilationem comitiorum ter praetor primus centuriis cunctis renuntiatus sum, facile intellexi, Quirites, et quid de me iudicaretis et quid aliis praescriberetis. Nunc cum et auctoritatis in me tantum sit quantum vos honoribus mandandis esse voluistis, et ad agendum facultatis tantum quantum homini vigilanti ex forensi usu prope cotidiana dicendi exercitatio potuit afferre, certe et, si quid auctoritatis in me est, apud eos utar qui eam mihi dederunt, et, si quid in dicendo consequi possum, iis ostendam potissimum qui ei quoque rei fructum suo iudicio tribuendum esse duxerunt. Atque illud in primis 3
mihi laetandum iure esse video, quod in hac insolita mihi ex hoc loco ratione dicendi causa talis oblata est in qua oratio deesse nemini possit. Dicendum est enim de Cn. Pompei singulari eximiaque virtute; huius autem orationis difficilius est exitum quam principium invenire. Ita mihi non tam copia quam modus in dicendo quaerendus est.

2. Atque, ut inde oratio mea proficiscatur unde haec omnis causa 4
ducitur, bellum grave et periculosum vestris vectigalibus ac sociis a duobus potentissimis regibus infertur, Mithridate et Tigrane, quorum alter relictus, alter lacessitus, occasionem sibi ad occupandam Asiam oblatam esse arbitratur. Equitibus Romanis, honestissimis viris, afferuntur ex Asia cotidie litterae, quorum magnae res aguntur in vestris vectigalibus exercendis occupatae; qui ad me, pro necessitudine quae mihi est cum illo ordine, causam rei publicae periculaque rerum suarum detulerunt: Bithyniae, quae nunc vestra provincia 5
est, vicos exustos esse complures; regnum Ariobarzanis, quod finitimum est vestris vectigalibus, totum esse in hostium potestate; *L.* Lucullum magnis rebus gestis ab eo bello discedere; huic qui succesSerit non satis esse paratum ad tantum bellum administrandum;

unum ab omnibus sociis et civibus ad id bellum imperatorem deposci atque expeti, eundem hunc unum ab hostibus metui, praeterea neminem.

6 Causa quae sit videtis; nunc quid agendum sit considerate. Primum mihi videtur de genere belli, deinde de magnitudine, tum de imperatore deligendo esse dicendum. Genus est enim belli eius modi quod maxime vestros animos excitare atque inflammare ad persequendi studium debeat: in quo agitur populi Romani gloria, quae vobis a maioribus cum magna in omnibus rebus tum summa in re militari tradita est; agitur salus sociorum atque amicorum, pro qua multa maiores vestri magna et gravia bella gesserunt; aguntur certissima populi Romani vectigalia et maxima, quibus amissis et pacis ornamenta et subsidia belli requiretis; aguntur bona multorum civium, quibus est a vobis et ipsorum et rei publicae causa consulendum.

7 3. Et quoniam semper appetentes gloriae praeter ceteras gentes atque avidi laudis fuistis, delenda est vobis illa macula Mithridatico bello superiore concepta, quae penitus iam insedit ac nimis inveteravit in populi Romani nomine, — quod is, qui uno die, tota in Asia, tot in civitatibus, uno nuntio atque una significatione litterarum cives Romanos *omnes* necandos trucidandosque denotavit, non modo adhuc poenam nullam suo dignam scelere suscepit, sed ab illo tempore annum iam tertium et vicesimum regnat, et ita regnat ut se non Ponti neque Cappadociae latebris occultare velit, sed emergere ex patrio regno atque in vestris vectigalibus, hoc est, in
8 Asiae luce versari. Etenim adhuc ita nostri cum illo rege contenderunt imperatores, ut ab illo insignia victoriae, non victoriam reportarent. Triumphavit L. Sulla, triumphavit L. Murena de Mithridate, duo fortissimi viri et summi imperatores; sed ita triumpharunt ut ille pulsus superatusque regnaret. Verum tamen illis imperatoribus laus est tribuenda quod egerunt, venia danda quod reliquerunt, propterea quod ab eo bello Sullam in Italiam res publica, Murenam Sulla revocavit.

9 4. Mithridates autem omne reliquum tempus non ad oblivionem veteris belli, sed ad comparationem novi contulit; qui postea, cum maximas aedificasset ornassetque classes exercitusque permagnos

quibuscumque ex gentibus potuisset comparasset, et se Bosphoranis, finitumis suis, bellum inferre simularet, usque in Hispaniam legatos ac litteras misit ad eos duces quibuscum tum bellum gerebamus, ut, cum duobus in locis disiunctissimis maximeque diversis uno consilio a binis hostium copiis bellum terra marique gereretur, vos ancipiti contentione districti de imperio dimicaretis. Sed tamen alterius 10
partis periculum, Sertorianae atque Hispaniensis, quae multo plus firmamenti ac roboris habebat, Cn. Pompei divino consilio ac singulari virtute depulsum est; in altera parte ita res a L. Lucullo, summo viro, est administrata ut initia illa rerum gestarum magna atque praeclara non felicitati eius, sed virtuti, haec autem extrema, quae nuper acciderunt, non culpae, sed fortunae tribuenda esse videantur. Sed de Lucullo dicam alio loco, et ita dicam, Quirites, ut neque vera laus ei detracta oratione mea neque falsa adficta esse videatur; de vestri imperi dignitate atque gloria—quoniam is est exorsus ora- 11
tionis meae—videte quem vobis animum suscipiendum putetis.

5. Maiores nostri saepe mercatoribus aut navicularis nostris iniuriosius tractatis bella gesserunt; vos tot milibus civium Romanorum uno nuntio atque uno tempore necatis, quo tandem animo esse debetis? Legati quod erant appellati superbius, Corinthum patres vestri, totius Graeciae lumen, extinctum esse voluerunt; vos eum regem inultum esse patiemini, qui legatum populi Romani consularem vinculis ac verberibus atque omni supplicio excruciatum necavit? Illi libertatem inminutam civium Romanorum non tulerunt; vos ereptam vitam neglegetis? Ius legationis verbo violatum illi persecuti sunt; vos legatum omni supplicio interfectum relinquetis? Videte ne, ut illis pulcherrimum fuit tantam vobis imperi 12
gloriam tradere, sic vobis turpissimum sit, id quod accepistis tueri et conservare non posse.

Quid? quod salus sociorum summum in periculum ac discrimen vocatur, quo tandem animo ferre debetis? Regno est expulsus Ariobarzanes rex, socius populi Romani atque amicus; imminent duo reges toti Asiae non solum vobis inimicissimi, sed etiam vestris sociis atque amicis; civitates autem omnes cuncta Asia atque Graecia vestrum auxilium exspectare propter periculi magnitudinem coguntur; imperatorem a vobis certum deposcere, cum praesertim

vos alium miseritis, neque audent neque se id facere sine summo
13 periculo posse arbitrantur. Vident et sentiunt hoc idem quod vos, —unum virum esse in quo summa sint omnia, et eum propter esse, quo etiam carent aegrius; cuius adventu ipso atque nomine, tametsi ille ad maritimum bellum venerit, tamen impetus hostium repressos esse intellegunt ac retardatos. Hi vos, quoniam libere loqui non licet, tacite rogant, ut se quoque, sicut ceterarum provinciarum socios, dignos existimetis quorum salutem tali viro commendetis; atque hoc etiam magis, quod ceteros in provinciam eius modi homines cum imperio mittimus, ut, etiam si ab hoste defendant, tamen ipsorum adventus in urbes sociorum non multum ab hostili expugnatione differant, hunc audiebant antea, nunc praesentem vident, tanta temperantia, tanta mansuetudine, tanta humanitate, ut ii beatissimi esse videantur apud quos ille diutissime commoratur.

14 6. Quare, si propter socios, nulla ipsi iniuria lacessiti, maiores nostri cum Antiocho, cum Philippo, cum Aetolis, cum Poenis bella gesserunt, quanto vos studio convenit iniuriis provocatos sociorum salutem una cum imperi vestri dignitate defendere, praesertim cum de maximis vestris vectigalibus agatur? Nam ceterarum provinciarum vectigalia, Quirites, tanta sunt ut iis ad ipsas provincias tutandas vix contenti esse possimus; Asia vero tam opima est ac fertilis ut et ubertate agrorum et varietate fructuum et magnitudine pastionis et multitudine earum rerum quae exportentur facile omnibus terris antecellat. Itaque haec vobis provincia, Quirites, si et belli utilitatem et pacis dignitatem retinere vultis, non modo a calamitate,
15 sed etiam a metu calamitatis est defendenda. Nam in ceteris rebus cum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur; at in vectigalibus non solum adventus mali, sed etiam metus ipse affert calamitatem. Nam cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiam si irruptio nulla facta est, tamen pecuaria relinquitur, agri cultura deseritur, mercatorum navigatio conquiescit. Ita neque ex portu neque ex decumis neque ex scriptura vectigal conservari potest; quare saepe totius anni
16 fructus uno rumore periculi atque uno belli terrore amittitur. Quo tandem [igitur] animo esse existimatis aut eos qui vectigalia nobis pensitant, aut eos qui exercent atque exigunt, cum duo reges cum

maximis copiis propter adsint? cum una excursio equitatus perbrevi tempore totius anni vectigal auferre possit? cum publicani familias maximas, quas in saltibus habent, quas in agris, quas in portubus atque custodiis, magno periculo se habere arbitrentur? Putatisne vos illis rebus frui posse, nisi eos qui vobis fructui sunt conservaritis non solum, ut ante dixi, calamitate, sed etiam calamitatis formidine liberatos?

7. Ac ne illud quidem vobis neglegendum est, quod mihi ego 17
extremum proposueram cum essem de belli genere dicturus, quod ad multorum bona civium Romanorum pertinet; quorum vobis pro vestra sapientia, Quirites, habenda est ratio diligenter. Nam et publicani, homines honestissimi atque ornatissimi, suas rationes et copias in illam provinciam contulerunt, quorum ipsorum per se res et fortunae vobis curae esse debent. Etenim, si vectigalia nervos esse rei publicae semper duximus, eum certe ordinem, qui exercet illa, firmamentum ceterorum ordinum recte esse dicemus. Deinde 18
ex ceteris ordinibus homines gnavi atque industrii partim ipsi in Asia negotiantur, quibus vos absentibus consulere debetis, partim eorum in ea provincia pecunias magnas collocatas habent. Est igitur humanitatis vestrae magnum numerum eorum civium calamitate prohibere, sapientiae videre multorum civium calamitatem a re publica seiunctam esse non posse. Etenim primum illud parvi refert, nos publicanis omissis vectigalia postea victoria recuperare; neque enim isdem redimendi facultas erit propter calamitatem, neque aliis voluntas propter timorem. Deinde, quod nos eadem 19
Asia atque idem iste Mithridates initio belli Asiatici docuit, id quidem certe calamitate docti memoria retinere debemus. Nam tum, cum in Asia res magnas permulti amiserant, scimus Romae solutione impedita fidem concidisse. Non enim possunt una in civitate multi rem ac fortunas amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem trahant calamitatem. A quo periculo prohibete rem publicam, et mihi credite id quod ipsi videtis: haec fides atque haec ratio pecuniarum, quae Romae, quae in foro versatur, inplicata est cum illis pecuniis Asiaticis et cohaeret; ruere illa non possunt, ut haec non eodem labefacta motu concidant. Quare videte *ne* non dubitandum vobis sit omni studio ad id bellum incumbere, in quo

gloria nominis vestri, salus sociorum, vectigalia maxima, fortunae plurimorum civium coniunctae cum re publica defendantur.

20 8. Quoniam de genere belli dixi, nunc de magnitudine pauca dicam. Potest enim hoc dici, belli genus esse ita necessarium ut sit gerendum, non esse ita magnum ut sit pertimescendum. In quo maxime laborandum est ne forte ea vobis quae diligentissime providenda sunt, contemnenda esse videantur. Atque ut omnes intellegant me L. Lucullo tantum impertire laudis quantum forti viro et sapienti homini et magno imperatori debeatur, dico eius adventu maximas Mithridati copias omnibus rebus ornatas atque instructas fuisse; urbemque, Asiae clarissimam nobisque amicissimam, Cyzicenorum obsessam esse ab ipso rege maxima multitudine et oppugnatam vehementissime, quam L. Lucullus virtute, assiduitate, consilio
21 summis obsidionis periculis liberavit; ab eodem imperatore classem magnam et ornatam, quae ducibus Sertorianis ad Italiam studio [atque odio] inflammata raperetur, superatam esse atque depressam; magnas hostium praeterea copias multis proeliis esse deletas patefactumque nostris legionibus esse Pontum, qui antea populo Romano ex omni aditu clausus fuisset; Sinopen atque Amisum, quibus in oppidis erant domicilia regis, omnibus rebus ornatas ac refertas, ceterasque urbes Ponti et Cappadociae permultas, uno aditu adventuque esse captas; regem, spoliatum regno patrio atque avito, ad alios se reges atque ad alias gentes supplicem contulisse; atque haec omnia salvis populi Romani sociis atque integris vectigalibus esse gesta. Satis opinor haec esse laudis, atque ita, Quirites, ut hoc vos intellegatis, a nullo istorum, qui huic obtrectant legi atque causae, L. Lucullum similiter ex hoc loco esse laudatum.

22 9. Requiretur fortasse nunc quem ad modum, cum haec ita sint, reliquum possit magnum esse bellum. Cognoscite, Quirites; non enim hoc sine causa quaeri videtur. Primum ex suo regno sic Mithridates profugit ut ex eodem Ponto Medea illa quondam profugisse dicitur, quam praedicant in fuga fratris sui membra in iis locis qua se parens persequeretur dissipavisse, ut eorum collectio dispersa maerorque patrius celeritatem persequendi retardaret. Sic Mithridates fugiens maximam vim auri atque argenti pulcherrimarumque rerum omnium, quas et a maioribus acceperat et ipse bello

superiore ex tota Asia direptas in suum regnum congesserat, in Ponto omnem reliquit. Haec dum nostri colligunt omnia diligentius, rex ipse e manibus effugit. Ita illum in persequendi studio maeror, hos laetitia tardavit. Hunc in illo timore et fuga Tigranes, 23
rex Armenius, excepit, diffidentemque rebus suis confirmavit, et adflictum erexit, perditumque recreavit. Cuius in regnum posteaquam L. Lucullus cum exercitu venit, plures etiam gentes contra imperatorem nostrum concitatae sunt. Erat enim metus iniectus iis nationibus, quas numquam populus Romanus neque lacessendas bello neque temptandas putavit; erat etiam alia gravis atque vehemens opinio, quae animos gentium barbararum pervaserat, fani locupletissimi et religiosissimi diripiendi causa in eas oras nostrum esse exercitum adductum. Ita nationes multae atque magnae novo quodam terrore ac metu concitabantur. Noster autem exercitus, tametsi urbem ex Tigranis regno ceperat et proeliis usus erat secundis, tamen nimia longinquitate locorum ac desiderio suorum commovebatur. Hic iam plura non dicam; fuit enim illud extre- 24
mum, ut ex iis locis a militibus nostris reditus magis maturus quam processio longior quaereretur. Mithridates autem et suam manum iam confirmarat et eorum qui se ex ipsius regno collegerant, et magnis adventiciis auxiliis multorum regum et nationum iuvabatur. Nam hoc fere sic fieri solere accepimus, ut regum adflictae fortunae facile multorum opes adliciant ad misericordiam, maximeque eorum, qui aut reges sunt aut vivunt in regno, ut iis nomen regale magnum et sanctum esse videatur. Itaque tantum victus efficere potuit quan- 25
tum incolumis numquam est ausus optare. Nam, cum se in regnum suum recepisset, non fuit eo contentus quod ei praeter spem acciderat,—ut illam, posteaquam pulsus erat, terram umquam attingeret, —sed in exercitum nostrum clarum atque victorem impetum fecit. Sinite hoc loco, Quirites, sicut poëtae solent, qui res Romanas scribunt, praeterire me nostram calamitatem, quae tanta fuit ut eam ad aures [L. Luculli] imperatoris non ex proelio nuntius, sed ex sermone rumor adferret. Hic in illo ipso malo gravissimaque belli 26
offensione L. Lucullus, qui tamen aliqua ex parte iis incommodis mederi fortasse potuisset, vestro iussu coactus,—quod imperi diuturnitati modum statuendum vetere exemplo putavistis, — partem

militum, qui iam stipendiis confecti erant, dimisit, partem *M'*. Glabrioni tradidit. Multa praetereo consulto; sed ea vos coniectura perspicite, quantum illud bellum factum putetis quod coniungant reges potentissimi, renovent agitatae nationes, suscipiant integrae gentes, novus imperator noster accipiat vetere exercitu pulso.

27 **10.** Satis mihi multa verba fecisse videor, quare esset hoc bellum genere ipso necessarium, magnitudine periculosum; restat, ut de imperatore ad id bellum deligendo ac tantis rebus praeficiendo dicendum esse videatur. Utinam, Quirites, virorum fortium atque innocentium copiam tantam haberetis ut haec vobis deliberatio difficilis esset, quemnam potissimum tantis rebus ac tanto bello praeficiendum putaretis! Nunc vero cum sit unus Cn. Pompeius, qui non modo eorum hominum qui nunc sunt gloriam, sed etiam antiquitatis memoriam virtute superarit, quae res est quae cuius-

28 quam animum in hac causa dubium facere possit? Ego enim sic existimo, in summo imperatore quattuor has res inesse oportere,— scientiam rei militaris, virtutem, auctoritatem, felicitatem. Quis igitur hoc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse debuit? qui e ludo atque pueritiae disciplinis bello maximo atque acerrimis hostibus ad patris exercitum atque in militiae disciplinam profectus est; qui extrema pueritia miles in exercitu fuit summi imperatoris, ineunte adulescentia maximi ipse exercitus imperator; qui saepius cum hoste conflixit, quam quisquam cum inimico concertavit, plura bella gessit quam ceteri legerunt, plures provincias confecit quam alii concupiverunt; cuius adulescentia ad scientiam rei militaris non alienis praeceptis sed suis imperiis, non offensionibus belli sed victoriis, non stipendiis sed triumphis est erudita. Quod denique genus esse belli potest, in quo illum non exercuerit fortuna rei publicae? Civile, Africanum, Transalpinum, Hispaniense mixtum ex civitatibus atque ex bellicosissimis nationibus, servile, navale bellum, varia et diversa genera et bellorum et hostium, non solum gesta ab hoc uno sed etiam confecta, nullam rem esse declarant in usu positam militari, quae huius viri scientiam fugere possit.

29 **11.** Iam vero virtuti Cn. Pompei quae potest oratio par inveniri? Quid est quod quisquam aut illo dignum aut vobis novum aut cuiquam inauditum possit adferre? Neque enim illae sunt solae vir-

tutes imperatoriae, quae vulgo existimantur, — labor in negotiis, fortitudo in periculis, industria in agendo, celeritas in conficiendo, consilium in providendo; quae tanta sunt in hoc uno quanta in omnibus reliquis imperatoribus quos aut vidimus aut audivimus non fuerunt. Testis est Italia, quam ille ipse victor L. Sulla huius vir- 30
tute et subsidio confessus est liberatam; testis est Sicilia, quam multis undique cinctam periculis non terrore belli, sed consili celeritate explicavit; testis est Africa, quae, magnis oppressa hostium copiis, eorum ipsorum sanguine redundavit; testis est Gallia, per quam legionibus nostris iter in Hispaniam Gallorum internicione patefactum est; testis est Hispania, quae saepissime plurimos hostes ab hoc superatos prostratosque conspexit; testis est iterum et saepius Italia, quae cum servili bello taetro periculosoque premeretur, ab hoc auxilium absente expetivit; quod bellum exspectatione eius attenuatum atque imminutum est, adventu sublatum ac sepultum; testes nunc vero iam omnes sunt orae atque omnes exterae 31
gentes ac nationes, denique maria omnia cum universa, tum in singulis oris omnes sinus atque portus. Quis enim toto mari locus per hos annos aut tam firmum habuit praesidium ut tutus esset aut tam fuit abditus ut lateret? Quis navigavit qui non se aut mortis aut servitutis periculo committeret, cum aut hieme aut referto praedonum mari navigaret? Hoc tantum bellum, tam turpe, tam vetus, tam late divisum atque dispersum, quis umquam arbitraretur aut ab omnibus imperatoribus uno anno aut omnibus annis ab uno imperatore confici posse? Quam provinciam tenuistis a praedonibus libe- 32
ram per hosce annos? quod vectigal vobis tutum fuit? quem socium defendistis? cui praesidio classibus vestris fuistis? quam multas existimatis insulas esse desertas? quam multas aut metu relictas aut a praedonibus captas urbes esse sociorum?

12. Sed quid ego longinqua commemoro? Fuit hoc quondam, fuit proprium populi Romani longe a domo bellare et propugnaculis imperi sociorum fortunas, non sua tecta defendere. Sociis ego nostris mare per hos annos clausum fuisse dicam, cum exercitus vestri numquam a Brundisio nisi hieme summa transmiserint? Qui ad vos ab exteris nationibus venirent captos querar, cum legati populi Romani redempti sint? Mercatoribus tutum mare non fuisse

dicam, cum duodecim secures in praedonum potestatem pervene-
33 rint? Cnidum aut Colophonem aut Samum, nobilissimas urbes, innumerabilesque alias captas esse commemorem, cum vestros portus, atque eos portus quibus vitam ac spiritum ducitis, in praedonum fuisse potestate sciatis? An vero ignoratis portum Caietae celeberrimum ac plenissimum navium inspectante praetore a praedonibus esse direptum, ex Miseno autem eius ipsius liberos, qui cum praedonibus antea ibi bellum gesserat, a praedonibus esse sublatos? Nam quid ego Ostiense incommodum atque illam labem atque ignominiam rei publicae querar, cum, prope inspectantibus vobis, classis ea, cui consul populi Romani praepositus esset, a praedonibus capta atque oppressa est? Pro di immortales! tantamne unius hominis incredibilis ac divina virtus tam brevi tempore lucem adferre rei publicae potuit, ut vos, qui modo ante ostium Tiberinum classem hostium videbatis, ii nunc nullam intra Oceani
34 ostium praedonum navem esse audiatis? Atque haec qua celeritate gesta sint quamquam videtis, tamen a me in dicendo praetereunda non sunt. Quis enim umquam aut obeundi negoti aut consequendi quaestus studio tam brevi tempore tot loca adire, tantos cursus conficere potuit, quam celeriter Cn. Pompeio duce tanti belli impetus navigavit? qui nondum tempestivo ad navigandum mari Siciliam adiit, Africam exploravit, in Sardiniam cum classe venit, atque haec tria frumentaria subsidia rei publicae firmissimis praesidiis classi-
35 busque munivit. Inde cum se in Italiam recepisset, duabus Hispaniis et Gallia Transalpina praesidiis ac navibus confirmata, missis item in oram Illyrici maris et in Achaiam omnemque Graeciam navibus, Italiae duo maria maximis classibus firmissimisque praesidiis adornavit; ipse autem ut Brundisio profectus est, undequinquagesimo die totam ad imperium populi Romani Ciliciam adiunxit; omnes, qui ubique praedones fuerunt, partim capti interfectique sunt, partim unius huius se imperio ac potestati dediderunt. Idem Cretensibus, cum ad eum usque in Pamphyliam legatos deprecatoresque misissent, spem deditionis non ademit, obsidesque imperavit. Ita tantum bellum, tam diuturnum, tam longe lateque dispersum, quo bello omnes gentes ac nationes premebantur, Cn. Pompeius extrema hieme apparavit, ineunte vere suscepit, media aestate confecit.

13. Est haec divina atque incredibilis virtus imperatoris. Quid? 36
ceterae, quas paulo ante commemorare coeperam, quantae atque quam multae sunt! Non enim bellandi virtus solum in summo ac perfecto imperatore quaerenda est, sed multae sunt artes eximiae huius administrae comitesque virtutis. Ac primum, quanta innocentia debent esse imperatores, quanta deinde in omnibus rebus temperantia, quanta fide, quanta facilitate, quanto ingenio, quanta humanitate! quae breviter qualia sint in Cn. Pompeio consideremus. Summa enim omnia sunt, Quirites, sed ea magis ex aliorum contentione quam ipsa per sese cognosci atque intellegi possunt. Quem 37
enim imperatorem possumus ullo in numero putare, cuius in exercitu centuriatus veneant atque venierint? Quid hunc hominem magnum aut amplum de re publica cogitare, qui pecuniam, ex aerario depromptam ad bellum administrandum, aut propter cupiditatem provinciae magistratibus diviserit aut propter avaritiam Romae in quaestu reliquerit? Vestra admurmuratio facit, Quirites, ut agnoscere videamini qui haec fecerint: ego autem nomino neminem, quare irasci mihi nemo poterit, nisi qui ante de se voluerit confiteri. Itaque propter hanc avaritiam imperatorum quantas calamitates, quocumque ventum sit, nostri exercitus ferant quis ignorat? Itinera 38
quae per hosce annos in Italia per agros atque oppida civium Romanorum nostri imperatores fecerint recordamini; tum facilius statuetis quid apud exteras nationes fieri existimetis. Utrum plures arbitramini per hosce annos militum vestrorum armis hostium urbes an hibernis sociorum civitates esse deletas? Neque enim potest exercitum is continere imperator qui se ipse non continet, neque severus esse in iudicando qui alios in se severos esse iudices non vult. Hic miramur hunc hominem tantum excellere ceteris, cuius legiones 39
sic in Asiam pervenerint ut non modo manus tanti exercitus, sed ne vestigium quidem cuiquam pacato nocuisse dicatur? Iam vero quem ad modum milites hibernent cotidie sermones ac litterae perferuntur; non modo ut sumptum faciat in militem nemini vis adfertur, sed ne cupienti quidem cuiquam permittitur. Hiemis enim, non avaritiae perfugium maiores nostri in sociorum atque amicorum tectis esse voluerunt.

14. Age vero, ceteris in rebus qua sit temperantia considerate. 40

Unde illam tantam celeritatem et tam incredibilem cursum inventum putatis? Non enim illum eximia vis remigum aut ars inaudita quaedam gubernandi aut venti aliqui novi tam celeriter in ultimas terras pertulerunt, sed eae res, quae ceteros remorari solent, non retardarunt; non avaritia ab instituto cursu ad praedam aliquam devocavit, non libido ad voluptatem, non amoenitas ad delectationem, non nobilitas urbis ad cognitionem, non denique labor ipse ad quietem; postremo signa et tabulas ceteraque ornamenta Graecorum oppidorum, quae ceteri tollenda esse arbitrantur, ea sibi ille
41 ne visenda quidem existimavit. Itaque omnes nunc in iis locis Cn. Pompeium sicut aliquem non ex hac urbe missum, sed de caelo delapsum intuentur; nunc denique incipiunt credere fuisse homines Romanos hac quondam continentia, quod iam nationibus exteris incredibile ac falso memoriae proditum videbatur; nunc imperi vestri splendor illis gentibus lucem adferre coepit; nunc intellegunt non sine causa maiores suos, tum cum ea temperantia magistratus habebamus, servire populo Romano quam imperare aliis maluisse. Iam vero ita faciles aditus ad eum privatorum, ita liberae querimoniae de aliorum iniuriis esse dicuntur, ut is, qui dignitate principi-
42 bus excellit, facilitate infimis par esse videatur. Iam quantum consilio, quantum dicendi gravitate et copia valeat,—in quo ipso inest quaedam dignitas imperatoria,—vos, Quirites, hoc ipso ex loco saepe cognovistis. Fidem vero eius quantam inter socios existimari putatis, quam hostes omnes omnium generum sanctissimam iudicarint? Humanitate iam tanta est ut difficile dictu sit utrum hostes magis virtutem eius pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint. Et quisquam dubitabit quin huic hoc tantum bellum transmittendum sit, qui ad omnia nostrae memoriae bella conficienda divino quodam consilio natus esse videatur?

43 **15.** Et quoniam auctoritas quoque in bellis administrandis multum atque in imperio militari valet, certe nemini dubium est quin ea re idem ille imperator plurimum possit. Vehementer autem pertinere ad bella administranda, quid hostes, quid socii de imperatoribus nostris existiment quis ignorat, cum sciamus homines, in tantis rebus ut aut contemnant aut metuant aut oderint aut ament, opinione non minus et fama quam aliqua ratione certa commoveri?

Quod igitur nomen umquam in orbe terrarum clarius fuit, cuius res gestae pares? de quo homine vos,—id quod maxime facit auctoritatem,—tanta et tam praeclara iudicia fecistis? An vero ullam usquam 44
esse oram tam desertam putatis, quo non illius diei fama pervaserit, cum universus populus Romanus, referto foro completisque omnibus templis ex quibus hic locus conspici potest, unum sibi ad commune omnium gentium bellum Cn. Pompeium imperatorem depoposcit? Itaque—ut plura non dicam, neque aliorum exemplis confirmem quantum [huius] auctoritas valeat in bello—ab eodem Cn. Pompeio omnium rerum egregiarum exempla sumantur; qui quo die a vobis maritimo bello praepositus est imperator, tanta repente vilitas annonae ex summa inopia et caritate rei frumentariae consecuta est unius hominis spe ac nomine, quantam vix ex summa ubertate agrorum diuturna pax efficere potuisset. Iam accepta in Ponto ca- 45
lamitate ex eo proelio de quo vos paulo ante invitus admonui,—cum socii pertimuissent, hostium opes animique crevissent, satis firmum praesidium provincia non haberet,—amisissetis Asiam, Quirites, nisi ad ipsum discrimen eius temporis divinitus Cn. Pompeium ad eas regiones fortuna populi Romani attulisset. Huius adventus et Mithridatem insolita inflammatum victoria continuit, et Tigranem magnis copiis minitantem Asiae retardavit. Et quisquam dubitabit quid virtute perfecturus sit, qui tantum auctoritate perfecerit, aut quam facile imperio atque exercitu socios et vectigalia conservaturus sit, qui ipso nomine ac rumore defenderit?

16. Age vero illa res quantam declarat eiusdem hominis apud 46
hostes populi Romani auctoritatem, quod ex locis tam longinquis tamque diversis tam brevi tempore omnes huic se uni dediderunt! quod Cretensium legati, cum in eorum insula noster imperator exercitusque esset, ad Cn. Pompeium in ultimas prope terras venerunt, eique se omnes Cretensium civitates dedere velle dixerunt! Quid? idem iste Mithridates nonne ad eundem Cn. Pompeium legatum usque in Hispaniam misit? eum quem Pompeius legatum semper iudicavit, ii quibus erat [semper] molestum ad eum potissimum esse missum, speculatorem quam legatum iudicari maluerunt. Potestis igitur iam constituere, Quirites, hanc auctoritatem, multis postea rebus gestis magnisque vestris iudiciis amplificatam, quantum apud

illos reges, quantum apud exteras nationes valituram esse existumetis.

47 Reliquum est ut de felicitate (quam praestare de se ipso nemo potest, meminisse et commemorare de altero possumus, sicut aequum est homines de potestate deorum) timide et pauca dicamus. Ego enim sic existimo: Maximo, Marcello, Scipioni, Mario, et ceteris magnis imperatoribus non solum propter virtutem, sed etiam propter fortunam saepius imperia mandata atque exercitus esse commissos. Fuit enim profecto quibusdam summis viris quaedam ad amplitudinem et ad gloriam et ad res magnas bene gerendas divinitus adiuncta fortuna. De huius autem hominis felicitate, de quo nunc agimus, hac utar moderatione dicendi, non ut in illius potestate fortunam positam esse dicam, sed ut praeterita meminisse, reliqua sperare videamur, ne aut invisa dis immortalibus oratio nostra aut
48 ingrata esse videatur. Itaque non sum praedicaturus quantas ille res domi militiae, terra marique, quantaque felicitate gesserit; ut eius semper voluntatibus non modo cives adsenserint, socii obtemperarint, hostes oboedierint, sed etiam venti tempestatesque obsecundarint: hoc brevissime dicam, neminem umquam tam impudentem fuisse qui ab dis immortalibus tot et tantas res tacitus auderet optare, quot et quantas di immortales ad Cn. Pompeium detulerunt. Quod ut illi proprium ac perpetuum sit, Quirites, cum communis salutis atque imperi tum ipsius hominis causa, sicuti facitis, velle et optare debetis.

49 Quare, cum et bellum sit ita necessarium ut neglegi non possit, ita magnum ut accuratissime sit administrandum; et cum ei imperatorem praeficere possitis, in quo sit eximia belli scientia, singularis virtus, clarissima auctoritas, egregia fortuna, dubitatis, Quirites, quin hoc tantum boni, quod vobis ab dis immortalibus oblatum et datum est, in rem publicam conservandam atque amplificandam conferatis?

50 17. Quod si Romae Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus atque mittendus; nunc cum ad ceteras summas utilitates haec quoque oportunitas adiungatur, ut in iis ipsis locis adsit, ut habeat exercitum, ut ab iis qui habent accipere statim possit, quid expectamus? aut cur non duci-

bus dis immortalibus eidem, cui cetera summa cum salute rei publicae commissa sunt, hoc quoque bellum regium committamus?

At enim vir clarissimus, amantissimus rei publicae, vestris bene- 5
ficiis amplissimis adfectus, Q. Catulus, itemque summis ornamentis honoris, fortunae, virtutis, ingeni praeditus, Q. Hortensius, ab hac ratione dissentiunt. Quorum ego auctoritatem apud vos multis locis plurimum valuisse et valere oportere confiteor; sed in hac causa, tametsi cognoscetis auctoritates contrarias virorum fortissimorum et clarissimorum, tamen omissis auctoritatibus ipsa re ac ratione exquirere possumus veritatem, atque hoc facilius, quod ea omnia quae a me adhuc dicta sunt idem isti vera esse concedunt,—et necessarium bellum esse et magnum, et in uno Cn. Pompeio summa esse omnia. Quid igitur ait Hortensius? Si uni omnia tribuen- 52
da sint, dignissimum esse Pompeium, sed ad unum tamen omnia deferri non oportere. Obsolevit iam ista oratio, re multo magis quam verbis refutata. Nam tu idem, Q. Hortensi, multa pro tua summa copia ac singulari facultate dicendi et in senatu contra virum fortem, A. Gabinium, graviter ornateque dixisti, cum is de uno imperatore contra praedones constituendo legem promulgasset, et ex hoc ipso loco permulta item contra eam legem verba fecisti. Quid? 53
tum, per deos immortales! si plus apud populum Romanum auctoritas tua quam ipsius populi Romani salus et vera causa valuisset, hodie hanc gloriam atque hoc orbis terrae imperium teneremus? An tibi tum imperium hoc esse videbatur cum populi Romani legati, quaestores, praetoresque capiebantur, cum ex omnibus provinciis commeatu et privato et publico prohibebamur, cum ita clausa nobis erant maria omnia ut neque privatam rem transmarinam neque publicam iam obire possemus?

18. Quae civitas antea umquam fuit,—non dico Atheniensium, 54
quae satis late quondam mare tenuisse dicitur; non Carthaginiensium, qui permultum classe ac maritimis rebus valuerunt; non Rhodiorum, quorum usque ad nostram memoriam disciplina navalis et gloria remansit,—quae civitas, inquam, antea tam tenuis, *quae* tam parva insula fuit, quae non portus suos et agros et aliquam partem regionis atque orae maritimae per se ipsa defenderet? At, hercule, aliquot annos continuos ante legem Gabiniam ille populus Romanus,

cuius usque ad nostram memoriam nomen invictum in navalibus pugnis permanserit, magna ac multo maxima parte non modo utili-
55 tatis, sed dignitatis atque imperi caruit; nos, quorum maiores Antiochum regem classe Persemque superarunt, omnibusque navalibus pugnis Carthaginiensis, homines in maritimis rebus exercitatissumos paratissumosque, vicerunt, ii nullo in loco iam praedonibus pares esse poteramus; nos, qui antea non modo Italiam tutam habebamus, sed omnes socios in ultimis oris auctoritate nostri imperi salvos praestare poteramus,—tum cum insula Delos, tam procul a nobis in Aegaeo mari posita, quo omnes undique cum mercibus atque oneribus commeabant, referta divitiis, parva, sine muro, nihil timebat,—idem non modo provinciis atque oris Italiae maritimis ac portubus nostris, sed etiam Appia iam via carebamus; et iis temporibus non pudebat magistratus populi Romani in hunc ipsum locum escendere, cum eum nobis maiores nostri exuviis nauticis et classium spoliis ornatum reliquissent!

56 **19.** Bono te animo tum, Q. Hortensi, populus Romanus et ceteros qui erant in eadem sententia dicere existimavit ea quae sentiebatis; sed tamen in salute communi idem populus Romanus dolori suo maluit quam auctoritati vestrae optemperare. Itaque una lex, unus vir, unus annus non modo nos illa miseria ac turpitudine liberavit, sed etiam effecit ut aliquando vere videremur omnibus genti-
57 bus ac nationibus terra marique imperare. Quo mihi etiam indignius videtur obtrectatum esse adhuc,—Gabinio dicam anne Pompeio an utrique, id quod est verius?—ne legaretur A. Gabinius Cn. Pompeio expetenti ac postulanti. Utrum ille, qui postulat ad tantum bellum legatum quem velit, idoneus non est qui impetret, cum ceteri ad expilandos socios diripiendasque provincias quos voluerunt legatos eduxerint; an ipse, cuius lege salus ac dignitas populo Romano atque omnibus gentibus constituta est, expers esse debet gloriae eius imperatoris atque eius exercitus qui consilio ipsius ac periculo
58 est constitutus? An C. Falcidius, Q. Metellus, Q. Caelius Latiniensis, Cn. Lentulus, quos omnes honoris causa nomino, cum tribuni plebi fuissent, anno proximo legati esse potuerunt; in uno Gabinio sunt tam diligentes, qui in hoc bello, quod lege Gabinia geritur, in hoc imperatore atque exercitu, quem per vos ipse constituit, etiam

praecipuo iure esse deberet? De quo legando consules spero ad senatum relaturos. Qui si dubitabunt aut gravabuntur, ego me profiteor relaturum; neque me impediet cuiusquam inimicum edictum quo minus vobis fretus vestrum ius beneficiumque defendam; neque praeter intercessionem quicquam audiam, de qua, ut arbitror, isti ipsi qui minantur etiam atque etiam quid liceat considerabunt. Mea quidem sententia, Quirites, unus A. Gabinius belli maritimi rerumque gestarum Cn. Pompeio socius ascribitur, propterea quod alter uni illud bellum suscipiendum vestris suffragiis detulit, alter delatum susceptumque confecit.

20. Reliquum est ut de Q. Catuli auctoritate et sententia dicen- 59
dum esse videatur. Qui cum ex vobis quaereret, si in uno Cn. Pompeio omnia poneretis, si quid eo factum esset, in quo spem essetis habituri, cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, cum omnes una prope voce in eo ipso vos spem habituros esse dixistis. Etenim talis est vir ut nulla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. Sed in hoc ipso ab eo vehementissime dissentio, quod, quo minus certa est hominum ac minus diuturna vita, hoc magis res publica, dum per deos immortales licet, frui debet summi viri vita atque virtute. "At enim ne quid novi fiat contra exempla atque 60
instituta maiorum." Non dicam hoc loco maiores nostros semper in pace consuetudini, in bello utilitati paruisse; semper ad novos casus temporum novorum consiliorum rationes accommodasse: non dicam duo bella maxima, Punicum atque Hispaniense, ab uno imperatore esse confecta, duasque urbes potentissimas, quae huic imperio maxime minitabantur, Karthaginem atque Numantiam, ab eodem Scipione esse deletas: non commemorabo nuper ita vobis patribusque vestris esse visum, ut in uno C. Mario spes imperi poneretur, ut idem cum Iugurtha, idem cum Cimbris, idem cum Teutonis bellum administraret. In ipso Cn. Pompeio, in quo novi constitui 61
nihil vult Q. Catulus, quam multa sint nova summa Q. Catuli voluntate constituta recordamini.

21. Quid tam novum quam adulescentulum privatum exercitum difficili rei publicae tempore conficere? Confecit. Huic praeesse? Praefuit. Rem optime ductu suo gerere? Gessit. Quid tam praeter

consuetudinem quam homini peradulescenti, cuius aetas a senatorio gradu longe abesset, imperium atque exercitum dari, Siciliam permitti, atque Africam bellumque in ea provincia administrandum? Fuit in his provinciis singulari innocentia, gravitate, virtute; bellum in Africa maximum confecit, victorem exercitum deportavit. Quid vero tam inauditum quam equitem Romanum triumphare? At eam quoque rem populus Romanus non modo vidit, sed omnium etiam
52 studio visendam et concelebrandam putavit. Quid tam inusitatum quam *ut*, cum duo consules clarissimi fortissimique essent, eques Romanus ad bellum maximum formidolosissimumque pro consule mitteretur? Missus est. Quo quidem tempore cum esset non nemo in senatu qui diceret "non oportere mitti hominem privatum pro consule," L. Philippus dixisse dicitur "non se illum sua sententia pro consule, sed pro consulibus mittere." Tanta in eo rei publicae bene gerendae spes constituebatur, ut duorum consulum munus unius adulescentis virtuti committeretur. Quid tam singulare quam ut ex senatus consulto legibus solutus consul ante fieret quam ullum alium magistratum per leges capere licuisset? quid tam incredibile quam ut iterum eques Romanus ex senatus consulto triumpharet? Quae in omnibus hominibus nova post hominum memoriam constituta sunt, ea tam multa non sunt quam haec quae
63 in hoc uno homine videmus. Atque haec tot exempla, tanta ac tam nova, profecta sunt in eundem hominem a Q. Catuli atque a ceterorum eiusdem dignitatis amplissimorum hominum auctoritate.

22. Quare videant ne sit periniquum et non ferundum illorum auctoritatem de Cn. Pompei dignitate a vobis comprobatam semper esse, vestrum ab illis de eodem homine iudicium populique Romani auctoritatem improbari; praesertim cum iam suo iure populus Romanus in hoc homine suam auctoritatem vel contra omnes qui dissentiunt possit defendere, propterea quod, isdem istis reclamantibus, vos unum illum ex omnibus delegistis quem bello prae-
64 donum praeponeretis. Hoc si vos temere fecistis, et rei publicae parum consuluistis, recte isti studia vestra suis consiliis regere conantur; sin autem vos plus tum in re publica vidistis, vos iis repugnantibus per vosmet ipsos dignitatem huic imperio, salutem orbi terrarum attulistis, aliquando isti principes et sibi et ceteris populi

Romani universi auctoritati parendum esse fateantur. Atque in hoc bello Asiatico et regio non solum militaris illa virtus, quae est in Cn. Pompeio singularis, sed aliae quoque virtutes animi magnae et multae requiruntur. Difficile est in Asia, Cilicia, Syria, regnisque interiorum nationum ita versari nostrum imperatorem ut nihil aliud nisi de hoste ac de laude cogitet. Deinde, etiam si qui sunt pudore ac temperantia moderatiores, tamen eos esse tales propter multitudinem cupidorum hominum nemo arbitratur. Difficile est 65
dictu, Quirites, quanto in odio simus apud exteras nationes propter eorum quos ad eas per hos annos cum imperio misimus libidines et iniurias. Quod enim fanum putatis in illis terris nostris magistratibus religiosum, quam civitatem sanctam, quam domum satis clausam ac munitam fuisse? Urbes iam locupletes et copiosae requiruntur quibus causa belli propter diripiendi cupiditatem inferatur. Liben- 66
ter haec coram cum Q. Catulo et Q. Hortensio, summis et clarissimis viris, disputarem; noverunt enim sociorum vulnera, vident eorum calamitates, querimonias audiunt. Pro sociis vos contra hostes exercitum mittere putatis, an hostium simulatione contra socios atque amicos? Quae civitas est in Asia quae non modo imperatoris aut legati, sed unius tribuni militum animos ac spiritus capere possit?

23. Quare, etiam si quem habetis qui collatis signis exercitus regios superare posse videatur, tamen, nisi erit idem qui se a pecuniis sociorum, qui ab eorum coniugibus ac liberis [qui ab ornamentis fanorum atque oppidorum], qui ab auro gazaque regia manus, oculos, animum cohibere possit, non erit idoneus qui ad bellum Asiaticum regiumque mittatur. Ecquam putatis civitatem pacatam fuisse 67
quae locuples sit, ecquam esse locupletem quae istis pacata esse videatur? Ora maritima, Quirites, Cn. Pompeium non solum propter rei militaris gloriam, sed etiam propter animi continentiam requisivit. Videbat enim imperatores locupletari quotannis pecunia publica praeter paucos, neque eos quicquam aliud adsequi classium nomine, nisi ut detrimentis accipiendis maiore adfici turpitudine videremur. Nunc qua cupiditate homines in provincias et quibus iacturis, quibus condicionibus proficiscantur, ignorant videlicet isti qui ad unum deferenda omnia esse non arbitrantur. Quasi vero

Cn. Pompeium non cum suis virtutibus tum etiam alienis vitiis
68 magnum esse videamus. Quare nolite dubitare quin huic uni credatis omnia, qui inter tot annos unus inventus sit quem socii in urbes suas cum exercitu venisse gaudeant.

Quod si auctoritatibus hanc causam, Quirites, confirmandam putatis, est vobis auctor vir bellorum omnium maximarumque rerum peritissimus, P. Servilius, cuius tantae res gestae terra marique extiterunt, ut, cum de bello deliberetis, auctor vobis gravior esse nemo debeat; est C. Curio, summis vestris beneficiis maximisque rebus gestis, summo ingenio et prudentia praeditus; est Cn. Lentulus, in quo omnes pro amplissimis vestris honoribus summum consilium, summam gravitatem esse cognovistis; est C. Cassius, integritate, virtute, constantia singulari. Quare videte horum auctoritatibus illorum orationi, qui dissentiunt, respondere*ne* posse videamur.

69 **24.** Quae cum ita sint, C. Manili, primum istam tuam et legem et voluntatem et sententiam laudo vehementissimeque comprobo; deinde te hortor ut auctore populo Romano maneas in sententia, neve cuiusquam vim aut minas pertimescas. Primum, in te satis esse animi perseverantiaeque arbitror; deinde, cum tantam multitudinem cum tanto studio adesse videamus, quantam iterum nunc in eodem homine praeficiendo videmus, quid est quod aut de re aut de perficiendi facultate dubitemus? Ego autem, quicquid est in me studi, consili, laboris, ingeni, quicquid hoc beneficio populi Romani atque hac potestate praetoria, quicquid auctoritate, fide, constantia possum, id omne ad hanc rem conficiendam tibi et populo Romano
70 polliceor ac defero; testorque omnes deos, et eos maxime qui huic loco temploque praesident, qui omnium mentes eorum qui ad rem publicam adeunt maxime perspiciunt, me hoc neque rogatu facere cuiusquam, neque quo Cn. Pompei gratiam mihi per hanc causam conciliari putem, neque quo mihi ex cuiusquam amplitudine aut praesidia periculis aut adiumenta honoribus quaeram; propterea quod pericula facile, ut hominem praestare oportet, innocentia tecti repellemus, honorem autem neque ab uno neque ex hoc loco, sed eadem illa nostra laboriosissima ratione vitae, si vestra voluntas
71 feret, consequemur. Quam ob rem, quicquid in hac causa mihi susceptum est, Quirites, id ego omne me rei publicae causa suscepisse

confirmo; tantumque abest ut aliquam mihi bonam gratiam quaesisse videar, ut multas me etiam simultates partim obscuras, partim apertas intellegam mihi non necessarias, vobis non inutiles suscepisse. Sed ego me hoc honore praeditum, tantis vestris beneficiis adfectum statui, Quirites, vestram voluntatem et rei publicae dignitatem et salutem provinciarum atque sociorum meis omnibus commodis et rationibus praeferre oportere.

Cicero, Archias

1. Si quid est in me ingeni, iudices, quod sentio quam sit exi- 1
guum, aut si qua exercitatio dicendi, in qua me non infitior mediocriter esse versatum, aut si huiusce rei ratio aliqua ab optimarum artium studiis ac disciplina profecta, a qua ego nullum confiteor aetatis meae tempus abhorruisse, earum rerum omnium vel in primis hic A. Licinius fructum a me repetere prope suo iure debet. Nam quoad longissime potest mens mea respicere spatium praeteriti temporis, et pueritiae memoriam recordari ultimam, inde usque repetens hunc video mihi principem et ad suscipiendam et ad ingrediendam rationem horum studiorum extitisse. Quod si haec vox, huius hortatu praeceptisque conformata, non nullis aliquando saluti fuit, a quo id accepimus quo ceteris opitulari et alios servare possemus, huic profecto ipsi, quantum est situm in nobis, et opem et salutem ferre debemus. Ac ne quis a nobis hoc ita dici forte 2
miretur, quod alia quaedam in hoc facultas sit ingeni, neque haec dicendi ratio aut disciplina, ne nos quidem huic uni studio penitus umquam dediti fuimus. Etenim omnes artes, quae ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinclum, et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur.

2. Sed ne cui vestrum mirum esse videatur me in quaestione legi- 3
tima et in iudicio publico,—cum res agatur apud praetorem populi Romani, lectissimum virum, et apud severissimos iudices, tanto conventu hominum ac frequentia,—hoc uti genere dicendi, quod non modo a consuetudine iudiciorum, verum etiam a forensi sermone abhorreat; quaeso a vobis ut in hac causa mihi detis hanc veniam,

accommodatam huic reo, vobis, quem ad modum spero, non molestam, ut me pro summo poëta atque eruditissimo homine dicentem, hoc concursu hominum litteratissimorum, hac vestra humanitate, hoc denique praetore exercente iudicium, patiamini de studiis humanitatis ac litterarum paulo loqui liberius, et in eius modi persona, quae propter otium ac studium minime in iudiciis periculisque tractata est, uti prope novo quodam et inusitato genere dicendi. Quod si mihi a vobis tribui concedique sentiam, perficiam profecto ut hunc A. Licinium non modo non segregandum, cum sit civis, a numero civium, verum etiam, si non esset, putetis asciscendum fuisse.

3. Nam, ut primum ex pueris excessit Archias atque ab iis artibus quibus aetas puerilis ad humanitatem informari solet se ad scribendi studium contulit, primum Antiochiae (nam ibi natus est loco nobili), celebri quondam urbe et copiosa atque eruditissimis hominibus liberalissimisque studiis affluenti, celeriter antecellere omnibus ingeni gloria coepit. Post in ceteris Asiae partibus cunctaque Graecia sic eius adventus celebrabrantur ut famam ingeni expectatio hominis, expectationem ipsius adventus admiratioque superaret. Erat Italia tum plena Graecarum artium ac disciplinarum, studiaque haec et in Latio vehementius tum colebantur quam nunc isdem in oppidis, et hic Romae propter tranquillitatem rei publicae non neglegebantur. Itaque hunc et Tarentini *et Locrenses* et Regini et Neapolitani civitate ceterisque praemiis donarunt; et omnes, qui aliquid de ingeniis poterant iudicare, cognitione atque hospitio dignum existimarunt. Hac tanta celebritate famae cum esset iam absentibus notus, Romam venit Mario consule et Catulo. Nactus est primum consules eos, quorum alter res ad scribendum maxumas, alter cum res gestas tum etiam studium atque aures adhibere posset. Statim Luculli, cum praetextatus etiam tum Archias esset, eum domum suam receperunt. Et erat hoc non solum ingeni ac litterarum, verum etiam naturae atque virtutis, ut domus, quae huius adulescentiae prima favit, eadem esset familiarissima senectuti. Erat temporibus illis iucundus Q. Metello illi Numidico et eius Pio filio; audiebatur a M. Aemilio; vivebat cum Q. Catulo et patre et filio; a L. Crasso colebatur; Lucullos vero et Drusum et Octavios et Catonem et totam Hortensiorum domum devinctam consuetudine

cum teneret, afficiebatur summo honore, quod eum non solum colebant qui aliquid percipere atque audire studebant, verum etiam si qui forte simulabant.

4. Interim satis longo intervallo, cum esset cum M. Lucullo in Siciliam profectus, et cum ex ea provincia cum eodem Lucullo decederet, venit Heracleam. Quae cum esset civitas aequissimo iure ac foedere, adscribi se in eam civitatem voluit; idque, cum ipse per se dignus putaretur, tum auctoritate et gratia Luculli ab Heraclienses impetravit. Data est civitas Silvani lege et Carbonis: Si 7
QUI FOEDERATIS CIVITATIBUS ADSCRIPTI FUISSENT; SI TUM, CUM LEX FEREBATUR, IN ITALIA DOMICILIUM HABUISSENT; ET SI SEXAGINTA DIEBUS APUD PRAETOREM ESSENT PROFESSI. Cum hic domicilium Romae multos iam annos haberet, professus est apud praetorem Q. Metellum, familiarissimum suum. Si nihil aliud nisi de civitate ac 8
lege dicimus, nihil dico amplius; causa dicta est. Quid enim horum infirmari, Gratti, potest? Heracleaene esse eum adscriptum negabis? Adest vir summa auctoritate et religione et fide, M. Lucullus; qui se non opinari sed scire, non audivisse sed vidisse, non interfuisse sed egisse dicit. Adsunt Heraclienses legati, nobilissimi homines; huius iudici causa cum mandatis et cum publico testimonio venerunt; qui hunc adscriptum Heracliensem dicunt. Hic tu tabulas desideras Heracliensium publicas, quas Italico bello incenso tabulario interisse scimus omnes? Est ridiculum ad ea quae habemus nihil dicere, quaerere quae habere non possumus; et de hominum memoria tacere, litterarum memoriam flagitare; et, cum habeas amplissimi viri religionem, integerrimi municipi ius iurandum fidemque, ea quae depravari nullo modo possunt repudiare, tabulas, quas idem dicis solere corrumpi, desiderare. An 9
domicilium Romae non habuit is, qui tot annis *ante* civitatem datam sedem omnium rerum ac fortunarum suarum Romae collocavit? An non est professus? Immo vero iis tabulis professus, quae solae ex illa professione collegioque praetorum optinent publicarum tabularum auctoritatem. 5. Nam—cum Appi tabulae neglegentius adservatae dicerentur; Gabini, quamdiu incolumis fuit, levitas, post damnationem calamitas omnem tabularum fidem resignasset—Metellus, homo sanctissimus modestissimusque omnium, tanta diligentia fuit ut ad

L. Lentulum praetorem et ad iudices venerit, et unius nominis litura se commotum esse dixerit. His igitur *in* tabulis nullam lituram in
10 nomine A. Licini videtis. Quae cum ita sint, quid est quod de eius civitate dubitetis, praesertim cum aliis quoque in civitatibus fuerit adscriptus? Etenim, cum mediocribus multis et aut nulla aut humili aliqua arte praeditis gratuito civitatem in Graecia homines inpertiebant, Reginos credo aut Locrenses aut Neapolitanos aut Tarentinos, quod scaenicis artificibus largiri solebant, id huic summa ingeni praedito gloria noluisse! Quid? [cum] ceteri non modo post civitatem datam, sed etiam post legem Papiam aliquo modo in eorum municipiorum tabulas inrepserunt; hic, qui ne utitur quidem illis in quibus est scriptus, quod semper se Heracliensem esse voluit,
11 reicietur? Census nostros requiris. Scilicet; est enim obscurum proximis censoribus hunc cum clarissimo imperatore, L. Lucullo, apud exercitum fuisse; superioribus cum eodem quaestore fuisse in Asia; primis, Iulio et Crasso, nullam populi partem esse censam. Sed—quoniam census non ius civitatis confirmat, ac tantum modo indicat eum qui sit census ita se iam tum gessisse pro cive—iis temporibus, quem tu criminaris ne ipsius quidem iudicio in civium Romanorum iure esse versatum, et testamentum saepe fecit nostris legibus, et adiit hereditates civium Romanorum, et in beneficiis ad aerarium delatus est a L. Lucullo pro consule. 6. Quaere argumenta, si quae potes; numquam enim hic neque suo neque amicorum iudicio revincetur.

12 Quaeres a nobis, Gratti, cur tanto opere hoc homine delectemur. Quia suppeditat nobis ubi et animus ex hoc forensi strepitu reficiatur et aures convicio defessae conquiescant. An tu existimas aut suppetere nobis posse quod cotidie dicamus in tanta varietate rerum, nisi animos nostros doctrina excolamus; aut ferre animos tantam posse contentionem, nisi eos doctrina eadem relaxemus? Ego vero fateor me his studiis esse deditum. Ceteros pudeat, si qui ita se litteris abdiderunt ut nihil possint ex iis neque ad communem adferre fructum neque in aspectum lucemque proferre; me autem quid pudeat, qui tot annos ita vivo, iudices, ut a nullius umquam me tempore aut commodo aut otium meum abstraxerit, aut voluptas
13 avocarit, aut denique somnus retardarit? Quare quis tandem me

reprehendat, aut quis mihi iure suscenseat, si, quantum ceteris ad suas res obeundas, quantum ad festos dies ludorum celebrandos, quantum ad alias voluptates et ad ipsam requiem animi et corporis conceditur temporum, quantum alii tribuunt tempestivis conviviis, quantum denique alveolo, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sumpsero? Atque hoc eo mihi concedendum est magis, quod ex his studiis haec quoque crescit oratio et facultas; quae quantacumque in me *est*, numquam amicorum periculis defuit. Quae si cui levior videtur, illa quidem certe, quae summa sunt, ex quo fonte hauriam sentio. Nam, nisi multorum praeceptis multis- 14
que litteris mihi ab adulescentia suasissem nihil esse in vita magno opere expetendum nisi laudem atque honestatem, in ea autem persequenda omnes cruciatus corporis, omnia pericula mortis atque exili parvi esse ducenda, numquam me pro salute vestra in tot ac tantas dimicationes atque in hos profligatorum hominum cotidianos impetus obiecissem. Sed pleni omnes sunt libri, plenae sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas; quae iacerent in tenebris omnia, nisi litterarum lumen accederet. Quam multas nobis imagines—non solum ad intuendum, verum etiam ad imitandum—fortissimorum virorum expressas scriptores et Graeci et Latini reliquerunt! quas ego mihi semper in administranda re publica proponens, animum et mentem meam ipsa cogitatione hominum excellentium conformabam.

7. Quaeret quispiam: "Quid? illi ipsi summi viri, quorum vir- 15
tutes litteris proditae sunt, istane doctrina, quam tu effers laudibus, eruditi fuerunt?" Difficile est hoc de omnibus confirmare, sed tamen est certum quid respondeam. Ego multos homines excellenti animo ac virtute fuisse sine doctrina, et naturae ipsius habitu prope divino per se ipsos et moderatos et graves extitisse fateor; etiam illud adiungo, saepius ad laudem atque virtutem naturam sine doctrina quam sine natura valuisse doctrinam. Atque idem ego hoc contendo, cum ad naturam eximiam et inlustrem accesserit ratio quaedam conformatioque doctrinae, tum illud nescio quid praeclarum ac singulare solere existere. Ex hoc esse hunc numero, 16
quem patres nostri viderunt, divinum hominem Africanum; ex hoc C. Laelium, L. Furium, moderatissimos homines et continentissimos; ex hoc fortissimum virum et illis temporibus doctissimum, *M.*

Catonem illum senem: qui profecto si nihil ad percipiendam colendamque virtutem litteris adiuvarentur, numquam se ad earum studium contulissent. Quod si non hic tantus fructus ostenderetur, et si ex his studiis delectatio sola peteretur, tamen, ut opinor, hanc animi remissionem humanissimam ac liberalissimam iudicaretis. Nam ceterae neque temporum sunt neque aetatum omnium neque locorum; at haec studia adulescentiam alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium ac solacium praebent, delectant domi, non impediunt foris, pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.

17. Quod si ipsi haec neque attingere neque sensu nostro gustare possemus, tamen ea mirari deberemus, etiam cum in aliis videremus. **8.** Quis nostrum tam animo agresti ac duro fuit, ut Rosci morte nuper non commoveretur? qui cum esset senex mortuus, tamen propter excellentem artem ac venustatem videbatur omnino mori non debuisse. Ergo ille corporis motu tantum amorem sibi conciliarat a nobis omnibus; nos animorum incredibiles motus celeri-
18 tatemque ingeniorum neglegemus? Quotiens ego hunc Archiam vidi, iudices (utar enim vestra benignitate, quoniam me in hoc novo genere dicendi tam diligenter attenditis), quotiens ego hunc vidi, cum litteram scripsisset nullam, magnum numerum optimorum versuum de iis ipsis rebus quae tum agerentur dicere ex tempore, quotiens revocatum eandem rem dicere, commutatis verbis atque sententiis! Quae vero accurate cogitateque scripsisset, ea sic vidi probari ut ad veterum scriptorum laudem perveniret. Hunc ego non diligam, non admirer, non omni ratione defendendum putem? Atque sic a summis hominibus eruditissimisque accepimus, ceterarum rerum studia ex doctrina et praeceptis et arte constare; poëtam natura ipsa valere, et mentis viribus excitari, et quasi divino quodam spiritu inflari. Quare suo iure noster ille Ennius "sanctos" appellat poëtas, quod quasi deorum aliquo dono atque munere com-
9 mendati nobis esse videantur. Sit igitur, iudices, sanctum apud vos, humanissimos homines, hoc poëtae nomen, quod nulla umquam barbaria violavit. Saxa et solitudines voci respondent, bestiae saepe immanes cantu flectuntur atque consistunt; nos instituti rebus optimis non poëtarum voce moveamur? Homerum Colophonii civem

esse dicunt suum, Chii suum vindicant, Salaminii repetunt, Smyrnaei vero suum esse confirmant, itaque etiam delubrum eius in oppido dedicaverunt; permulti alii praeterea pugnant inter se atque contendunt. 9. Ergo illi alienum, quia poëta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt; nos hunc vivum, qui et voluntate et legibus noster est, repudiabimus praesertim cum omne olim studium atque omne ingenium contulerit Archias ad populi Romani gloriam laudemque celebrandam? Nam et Cimbricas res adulescens attigit, et ipsi illi C. Mario, qui durior ad haec studia videbatur, iucundus fuit. Neque enim quisquam est tam aversus a Musis qui non mandari versibus aeternum suorum laborum facile praeconium patiatur. Themistoclem illum, summum Athenis virum, dixisse aiunt, cum ex eo quaereretur, quod acroama aut cuius vocem libentissime audiret: "Eius a quo sua virtus optime praedicaretur." Itaque ille Marius item eximie L. Plotium dilexit, cuius ingenio putabat ea quae gesserat posse celebrari. Mithridaticum vero bellum, magnum atque difficile et in multa varietate terra marique versatum, totum ab hoc expressum est; qui libri non modo L. Lucullum, fortissimum et clarissimum virum, verum etiam populi Romani nomen illustrant. Populus enim Romanus aperuit Lucullo imperante Pontum, et regiis quondam opibus et ipsa natura et regione vallatum; populi Romani exercitus eodem duce non maxima manu innumerabilis Armeniorum copias fudit; populi Romani laus est urbem amicissimam Cyzicenorum eiusdem consilio ex omni impetu regio atque totius belli ore ac faucibus ereptam esse atque servatam; nostra semper feretur et praedicabitur, L. Lucullo dimicante, cum interfectis ducibus depressa hostium classis est, incredibilis apud Tenedum pugna illa navalis; nostra sunt tropaea, nostra monumenta, nostri triumphi. Quae quorum ingeniis ecferuntur, ab iis populi Romani fama celebratur. Carus fuit Africano superiori noster Ennius, itaque etiam in sepulcro Scipionum putatur is esse constitutus ex marmore; cuius laudibus certe non solum ipse qui laudatur, sed etiam populi Romani nomen ornatur. In caelum huius proavus Cato tollitur; magnus honos populi Romani rebus adiungitur. Omnes denique illi Maximi, Marcelli, Fulvii, non sine communi omnium nostrum laude decorantur. 10. Ergo illum qui haec fecerat, Rudi-

num hominem, maiores nostri in civitatem receperunt; nos hunc Heracliensem, multis civitatibus expetitum, in hac autem legibus constitutum, de nostra civitate eiciemus?

23 Nam, si quis minorem gloriae fructum putat ex Graecis versibus percipi quam ex Latinis, vehementer errat; propterea quod Graeca leguntur in omnibus fere gentibus, Latina suis finibus, exiguis sane, continentur. Quare, si res eae quas gessimus orbis terrae regionibus definiuntur, cupere debemus, quo manuum nostrarum tela pervenerint, eodem gloriam famamque penetrare; quod cum ipsis populis de quorum rebus scribitur haec ampla sunt, tum iis certe qui de vita gloriae causa dimicant hoc maximum et periculorum in-
24 citamentum est et laborum. Quam multos scriptores rerum suarum magnus ille Alexander secum habuisse dicitur! Atque is tamen, cum in Sigeo ad Achillis tumulum adstitisset: "O fortunate," inquit, "adulescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!" Et vere. Nam, nisi Ilias illa extitisset, idem tumulus qui corpus eius contexerat nomen etiam obruisset. Quid? noster hic Magnus, qui cum virtute fortunam adaequavit, nonne Theophanem Mytilenaeum, scriptorem rerum suarum, in contione militum civitate donavit; et nostri illi fortes viri, sed rustici ac milites, dulcedine quadam gloriae commoti, quasi participes eiusdem laudis, magno illud cla-
25 more approbaverunt? Itaque, credo, si civis Romanus Archias legibus non esset, ut ab aliquo imperatore civitate donaretur perficere non potuit. Sulla cum Hispanos et Gallos donaret, credo, hunc petentem repudiasset; quem nos in contione vidimus, cum ei libellum malus poëta de populo subiecisset, quod epigramma in eum fecisset tantum modo alternis versibus longiusculis, statim ex iis rebus quas tum vendebat iubere ei praemium tribui, sed ea condicione, ne quid postea scriberet. Qui sedulitatem mali poëtae duxerit aliquo tamen praemio dignam, huius ingenium et virtutem
26 in scribendo et copiam non expetisset? Quid? a Q. Metello Pio, familiarissimo suo, qui civitate multos donavit, neque per se neque per Lucullos impetravisset? qui praesertim usque eo de suis rebus scribi cuperet ut etiam Cordubae natis poëtis, pingue quiddam sonantibus atque peregrinum, tamen aures suas dederet. **11.** Neque enim est hoc dissimulandum,—quod obscurari non potest,—sed prae

nobis ferendum: trahimur omnes studio laudis, et optimus quisque maxime gloria ducitur. Ipsi illi philosophi, etiam in iis libellis quos de contemnenda gloria scribunt, nomen suum inscribunt; in eo ipso, in quo praedicationem nobilitatemque despiciunt, praedicari de se ac nominari volunt. Decimus quidem Brutus, summus vir et 27
imperator, Acci, amicissimi sui, carminibus templorum ac monimentorum aditus exornavit suorum. Iam vero ille, qui cum Aetolis Ennio comite bellavit, Fulvius, non dubitavit Martis manubias Musis consecrare. Quare, in qua urbe imperatores prope armati poëtarum nomen et Musarum delubra coluerunt, in ea non debent togati iudices a Musarum honore et a poëtarum salute abhorrere.

Atque ut id libentius faciatis, iam me vobis, iudices, indicabo, et 28
de meo quodam amore gloriae, nimis acri fortasse verum tamen honesto, vobis confitebor. Nam, quas res nos in consulatu nostro vobiscum simul pro salute huius *urbis* atque imperi et pro vita civium proque universa re publica gessimus, attigit hic versibus atque inchoavit. Quibus auditis, quod mihi magna res et iucunda visa est, hunc ad perficiendum adhortatus sum. Nullam enim virtus aliam mercedem laborum periculorumque desiderat praeter hanc laudis et gloriae; qua quidem detracta, iudices, quid est quod in hoc tam exiguo vitae curriculo et tam brevi tantis nos in laboribus exerceamus? Certe, si nihil animus praesentiret in posterum, et si, 29
quibus regionibus vitae spatium circumscriptum est, eisdem omnes cogitationes terminaret suas, nec tantis se laboribus frangeret, neque tot curis vigiliisque angeretur, nec totiens de ipsa vita dimicaret. Nunc insidet quaedam in optimo quoque virtus, quae noctes ac dies animum gloriae stimulis concitat, atque admonet non cum vitae tempore esse dimittendam commemorationem nominis nostri, sed cum omni posteritate adaequandam. **12.** An vero 30
tam parvi animi videamur esse omnes, qui in re publica atque in his vitae periculis laboribusque versamur, ut, cum usque ad extremum spatium nullum tranquillum atque otiosum spiritum duxerimus, nobiscum simul moritura omnia arbitremur? An statuas et imagines, non animorum simulacra sed corporum, studiose multi summi homines reliquerunt; consiliorum relinquere ac virtutum nostrarum effigiem nonne multo malle debemus, summis ingeniis

expressam et politam? Ego vero omnia quae gerebam, iam tum in gerendo, spargere me ac disseminare arbitrabar in orbis terrae memoriam sempiternam. Haec vero *sive* a meo sensu post mortem afutura est sive, ut sapientissimi homines putaverunt, ad aliquam animi mei partem pertinebit, nunc quidem certe cogitatione quadam speque delector.

31 Quare conservate, iudices, hominem pudore eo, quem amicorum videtis comprobari cum dignitate tum etiam vetustate; ingenio autem tanto quantum id convenit existimari, quod summorum hominum ingeniis expetitum esse videatis, causa vero eius modi, quae beneficio legis, auctoritate municipi, testimonio Luculli, tabulis Metelli comprobetur. Quae cum ita sint, petimus a vobis, iudices, si qua non modo humana, verum etiam divina in tantis ingeniis commendatio debet esse, ut eum qui vos, qui vestros imperatores, qui populi Romani res gestas semper ornavit, qui etiam his recentibus nostris vestrisque domesticis periculis aeternum se testimonium laudis daturum esse profitetur, estque ex eo numero qui semper apud omnes sancti sunt habiti itaque dicti, sic in vestram accipiatis fidem, ut humanitate vestra levatus potius quam acerbitate violatus esse videatur.

32 Quae de causa pro mea consuetudine breviter simpliciterque dixi, iudices, ea confido probata esse omnibus; quae a forensi aliena iudicialique consuetudine, et de hominis ingenio et communiter de ipso studio locutus sum, ea, iudices, a vobis spero esse in bonam partem accepta; ab eo qui iudicium exercet, certo scio.

INDEX OF WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS

NOTE.—The numerical references are to sections and subsections of the Notes on Idiom, letters referring to subsections. Abbreviations: abl. = ablative; acc. = accusative; adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb; constr. = construction; dat. = dative; gen. = genitive; ind. disc. = indirect discourse; infin. = infinitive; prep. = preposition. Other abbreviations are easily understood.

a distinguished in use from **ab** and **abs**, 264.

abhinc = *ago*, constr., 129.

Ablative, syntax of, 101–127; abl. of accompaniment, 107; of cause, 123–124; of degree of difference, 116; of indefinite value, 120; of manner, 121–122; of material, 103; of means, 108, 110; of origin or source, 102; of place *from which*, 137; of place *in which* (where), 137; of price, 119; of quality, 117–118; of quality with a proper noun, 118; of separation, 101; of specification, 106; of time, 128; to express *distance from*, 136; with adjectives (**fretus**, etc.), 111; with a comparative, 104; with deponents, (**utor, fruor**, etc.), 115; with **ex** or **de** for partitive gen., 71; with **opus est**, 114; with verbs of *plenty*, etc., 112; with verbs of *reminding*, etc., 78; ablative absolute, 125–127; ablative absolute, relation to subject of main clause, 127; ablative absolute without a participle, 126; ablative absolute representing perf. active participle, 244; ablative absolute representing English coördination, 310.

ac (atque) with **idem**, 32.

Accompaniment, expressed by **cum** and abl., 107.

Accusative, syntax of, 53–58; acc. or dat. with some verbs (**consulo**, etc.), 90; double acc., 54–55; of duration of time, 128; with **abhinc**, 129; to express distance from, 136; of exclamation, 58; of extent of space, 135, 66; acc. of neuter pronouns and adjectives with verbs, 53; acc. of person and abl. of thing with **dono**, etc., 86; of place *to which*, 137; with **per** = *agent through whom*, 109; with verbs of *aiding*, *pleasing*, etc., 88; with verbs of *pitying*, *repenting*, etc., 80–81; with verbs of *remembering*, etc., 76–77.

Accusing, etc., verbs of, with gen., 82.

ac si, 217.

Action, nouns of, 60–61.

Adjectives, in general, 1–10; as substantives, 3–4; agreement of attributive adjectives, 1; agreement of predicate adj., 2; agreement with natural gender, 2 N.; comparative of, 5–7; denoting a part (**medius, totus**, etc.), 10; adjectives of *friendliness*, with gen., 93; of *friendliness* with dat., 92; adj. use of participles, 245–248; with abl., 111, 113; with gen., 74; stylistic notes, 305–306; Latin adj. = English noun, 301; = English gen., 63–64; omitted in Latin, 306; order, 292.

adiuvo, 88.

Adverbs, negative, 275–279; order, 294; pronominal, 21.

After, with phrases of time, 131.
Agent, expressed by dat., 95; by **a, ab,** with abl., 96.
Agreement, of adjectives, 1–2; of appositives, 46–48; of predicate nouns, 51; of collective noun and a verb, 149; of subject and predicate, 145–149; of verb, 145–149.
aliquis, 36–38.
alius, 45; distinction from **alter,** 45.
alter, 45.
Although, 218.
an in indirect questions, 220 footnote; in direct questions, 281 N.
Anaphora, 287 (b).
Answers, 283.
antequam, 209–210.
Apposition, 46–50; to a locative, etc., 140; to a possessive pronoun, 48; to two or more nouns, 47; with gen. of quality, 67; clauses of, introduced by **ut, ne, ut non,** 192, 199; appositive = English clause of time, etc., 49; = English gen., 62; order, 290.
As if, 217.
As long as, 206.
As soon as, 203.
Attraction, subjunctive by, 232.
Auxiliary verbs, English, omitted in Latin, 308.

Before, with phrases of time, 131; with clauses, 209–210.
-ble, English adjectives in, how rendered, 305.

Caesar, reform of calendar, 133 footnote.
Calendar, 133.
causa with gen. of gerund, etc., 253.
Causal clauses, 185–187; with **cum,** 186; with **quod, quia, quoniam,** 185; expressed by attributive participle, 246.
Causal relatives, 187.
Cause, abl. of, 123–124.
Character, gen. of, 65–68.
Characteristic, clauses of, 182–184.
Chiasmus, 287 (c).
circumdo, constr. with, 86.
Clause, English subordinate, expressed by abl. absolute, 125; by participles, 246; arrangement of, 296–297.
coepi, constr. of, in passive, 152.
Collective noun with singular verb, 149.
Comparative of adjectives, 5–7; two comparatives with one noun, 6; ways of strengthening, 7; governing abl., 104.
Comparison, conditional clauses of, 217.
Conative imperfect, 158.
Concession, expressed by attributive participle, 246.
Concessive clauses, 218.
Conditional clauses of comparison, 217.
Conditions, 211–216; *contrary to fact*, 215–216; contrary to fact in ind. disc., 230; apodosis in indicative, 216; *future* ("less vivid"), 214; future ("more vivid"), 213; future in ind. disc., 229; *simple* (where apodosis states a fact), 211; simple in ind. disc., 229; with apodosis in imperative, hortatory subjunctive, etc., 212; expressed by attributive participle, 246.
Conjunctions, list of and uses, 266–274; adversative, 270; causal, 274; copulative, 266–269; correlative, 272; disjunctive, 271; disjunctive correlative, 272; inferential, 273; illative, 273; illative and copulative, 273; replaced by phrases, 273.
Connection indicated by order, 288.
Copulative verbs, 51.
cum, causal, 186–187; concessive, 218; temporal, 203–205; clauses with, = English perf. active participle, 244; = English present passive participle, 244; with **idem,** 32.
cum primum = *as soon as*, 203.
cupio, constr. with, 236 N.

Dates, 132–133.
Dative, syntax of, 85–100; or acc. with **consulo,** etc., 90; of advantage, 98;

of agent, 95 ; of indirect object, 85–86; of interest, 97–98; of person and acc. of thing with **dono,** etc., 86; of possessor, 94; of purpose or end, 99; with verbs compounded with prepositions (**ad, ante,** etc.), 91 ; with intransitives (*favor, help,* etc.), 87; with adjectives, 92; of purpose, represented by predicate nominative, 100; retained with passive of intransitives, 89.
Days of the month, 133; division into hours, 134.
Declaratory sentences in ind. disc., 221, 224.
Degree of difference, abl. of, 116.
Deliberative subjunctive, 177.
Demonstrative pronouns, 15–24; of first person, 15; of second person, 17; of third person, 19; order of, 293.
Deponents, with abl., 115; passive missing, how represented, 307.
Descriptive genitive, 65–68.
desino, constr. of, in passive, 152.
Direct reflexive, 25–26.
Discourse, indirect (see Indirect Discourse).
Disjunctive questions (see Double Questions).
Distance from, how expressed, 136.
domus, constr., 138.
dono, constr., 86.
Double dative, 99 and N.
Double negative, 276–277.
Double questions, direct, 282; indirect, 220 N.
Doubting, verbs of, constr., 201.
dum = *as long as,* 206; in proviso, 219; representing present passive participle, 244; = *until,* 207–208; = *while,* 204.
dum modo, in proviso, 219.
dum ne, in proviso, 219.
Duration of time, acc. of, 128.

e, distinguished in use from **ex,** 264.
Epistolary tenses, 167.
erga, with acc. = objective gen., 61.
esse, position, 291 (b).
et, how avoided in Latin, 310.
etsi = *although,* 218.
Euphony, 289.
Exclamation, in the acc., 58.
Extent of space, acc. of, 135.

Fearing, verbs of constr., 195.
Feeling, nouns of, 60–61.
For, with temporal expressions, 131.
Forgetting, verbs of constr. with, 75–76.
Future time, in the subjunctive, 172.

Genitive, syntax of, 59–84; with adjectives, 74; with nouns of *action* or *feeling,* 60; of charge or penalty, 82; of indefinite value, 84; objective, 60–61; partitive, 70–73; predicate, 69; of quality, 65–68; with verbs, 75–84; with verbs of *accusing,* etc., 82; with impersonal verbs, 80; with **interest,** 83; with verbs of *pity,* etc., 79–80; with verbs of *reminding,* 78; with **potior,** 115 N.; of personal pronouns, 12–13.
Gerund and gerundive, syntax of, 251–260; gerund and gerundive distinguished, 251; genitive, 253; dative, 255–256; dative after words of *fitness,* 256; accusative, 257–258; gerund with acc. represented by gerundive, 252; acc. of gerundive with **curo, loco,** etc., 258; ablative, 259; gerundive denoting *necessity* or *obligation,* 260; gerundive = English adj. in *-ble,* 305; gerundive of intransitive verbs used impersonally, 260; gerundive of **utor, fruor,** etc., 260 N.; gerundive with **mei, tui, sui,** etc., 254; nominative of gerund represented by infin., 253 footnote; phrase with gerund = English adj. in *-ble,* 305.
gratia, with gen. of gerund, etc., 253.

haud, 275 N.
haud scio an, 220 footnote.

hic, 15–16; = *the following*, 16; = *the latter*, 15; = *the preceding*, 16.
Hindering, verbs of, constr., 194; followed by **quin** when negative, etc., 200.
Historical present, 154.
Historical tenses, 168.
Hortatory subjunctive, 174; in ind. disc., 222.
Hours, Roman reckoning of, 134.

idem, 31–32.
ille, 19–20; **ille . . . hic** = *the former . . . the latter*, 15; = *the well-known*, 20 (cf. 68).
Imperative, 233–234; present, 234; future, 234; in ind. disc., 222.
Impersonal expressions with infin. as subject, 235.
Impersonal verbs with gen., 80.
in with acc. = objective gen., 61.
Indefinite pronouns, 36–45; order of, 293.
Indicative mode, 173; in apodosis of conditions contrary to fact, 216; in rhetorical questions, 178
Indirect discourse, 221–232; tense of infin. in, 224–227; tenses of subjunctive in, 225–226; after verbs of *promising*, etc., 227; with passive verb of *saying*, 228; simple and future conditions in, 229; conditions contrary to fact in, 230; hortatory subjunctive in, 222; imperative in, 222; questions in, 223; wishes in, 222; implied, 231.
Indirect questions, 220.
Indirect reflexive, 27.
Infinitive, syntax of, 235–241; as object, 236; as object of **volo**, etc., 193; as subject, 235; with **video**, etc., distinguished from participle, 248; future infin. with verbs of *promising*, etc., 227; in ind. disc., 224; sequence after, 226; tenses of, 240; with subject acc. as object of **volo**, etc., 238; with subject acc. as subject of **par est**, etc., 237.
inquam, order, 291 N.
Instrument (see Means).
"Integral part," subjunctive of (see Attraction).
inter nos, se, etc., 28.
Interest, expressed by dat., 97.
interest, constr. with, 83.
Interrogative pronouns, order of, 293.
Interrogative sentences, 280–283.
Intransitive verbs, with dative, 87; used impersonally in the passive, 89, 150.
ipse, 29–30.
is, 22–24.
Islands, names of small, in constr. of place, 138–140.
iste, 17–18.
iubeo, with acc., 88; with infinitive, 193.

-less, English adjectives in, rendered by a phrase, 305 N.
licet = *although*, 218.
longe, with superlative, 7.

malim, with subjunctive, 239.
Manner, abl. of, 121–122; expressed by attributive participle, 246.
Material, abl. of, with **ex**, 103.
Means, abl. of, 108; means and agent distinguished, 108; expressed by attributive participle, 246.
Measure, gen. of, 65–66; gen. of, and acc. of extent, 66.
Measure of difference (see Degree).
medius, and other adjectives denoting a part, 10.
Middle sense of the passive voice, 151.
mille, and **millia** with the gen., 73.
miseror, constr. with, 81.
Modes, in independent clauses, 173–179; in dependent clauses, 180 ff.
modo, in proviso, 219.
Months, 133.
Motion *to* or *from* which with several nouns, 141.
multo with comparative, 7.

natus, with abl. of origin or source, 102.

ne, uses, 279; in subject clauses, 191; in object clauses, 190; with verbs of *hindering*, 194; in clauses of proviso, 219.
-ne, in direct questions, 280 (b), 281; in indirect questions, 220.
-ne . . . an, in double questions, 282, 220 N.
Necessity, expressed by the gerundive, 260.
Negative command (see Prohibition).
Negatives, 275–279; **ne,** 279; **neque,** 278; two negatives = affirmative, 276.
Neighborhood, idea of, how expressed, 139.
neque, 278.
No, 283 and Note.
nomen est, constr. with, 50.
non, 275; position of, causes difference in meaning, 277; represented by **neque,** 278.
non dubito = *not to hesitate*, 202.
nonne, in questions, 280 (b), 281.
Nouns, 46–144.
num, in direct questions, 280 (b), 281; in indirect questions, 220.
Numerals, order of, 292 (c).

O, interjection, with vocative, 52.
Object clauses, with **ut** or **ne,** 190; with **ut** or **ut non,** 197; of the infin., 236, 193; of the infin. with subject acc., 238.
Objective genitive, 60–61.
Obligation, expressed by gerundive, 260.
omnis, contrasted with **quisque,** 41.
opto, constr. with, 236 N.
opus est, with dat. of person and abl. of thing, 114.
Order of words, 284–297; flexible in Latin, 284; two types of, 284; grammatical, 284–285; rhetorical, 284, 286; influenced by emphasis, 287; influenced by desire to indicate connection, 288; influenced by desire for euphony or rhythm, 289; of adjectives, 292; of adverbs, 294; of numerals, 292 (c); of prepositions, 295; of pronouns, 14, 293; of substantives, 290; of verbs, 291; of vocative, 52; of clauses in a period, 296–297.
Ordinals, in dates, 132 footnote; with **quisque,** 43.
Origin or source, abl. of, 102.

Part, adjectives denoting, 10; nouns denoting (see Partitive).
Participles, syntax of, 242–250; definition and temporal force of, 242; English present = Latin perf. of some deponent verbs, 243; perfect, of some deponents, 243; attributive, 245–250; attributive, carries main idea, 247; attributive, expresses *time*, *cause*, *manner*, etc., 246; present and perfect, as substantives, 249; future, with substantives, 250; perf. passive = English adj. in *-ble*, 305; perf. active, how represented in Latin, 244; present passive, how represented in Latin, 244; with **video,** etc., distinguished from infin., 248.
Partitive genitive, 70–73; substitutes for, 71.
Passive, of intransitive verbs, 89, 150; Latin and English compared in use, 309.
per, with acc. to express *agent through whom*, 109.
Perfect definite, sequence with, 169.
Perfect infinitive, sequence with, 171, 226.
Period, definition of and prevalence of in Latin, 296; analysis of, into types, 296 N.
Periphrastic conjugation, 165–166.
Personal pronouns, 11–14; use of genitive of, 12–13; order of, 14.
Pity, verbs of, constr., 79–80
Place, constr. of, 135–144; *from which*, 137; *to which*, 137; *in which*, 137; *in which* without **in,** 144; with towns, etc., 138; several nouns of, with a verb of motion, 141; with verbs of *calling together*, etc., 142; with verbs of *placing*, etc., 143.

Plenty, verbs of, constr. with, 112.
Polite subjunctive, 179.
Possessive pronouns, 33–35; for gen. of personal pronouns, 13; instead of subjective gen., 34; order of, 293.
Possessor, dat. of, 94.
possum, etc., order, 291 (a).
postquam, posteaquam, constr. with, 203; clauses with, to represent perf. active participle, 244.
"Potential" subjunctive, 179.
Predicate genitive, 69.
Predicate nominative, representing dat. of purpose, 100; expressions made up of **est** with, 237.
Predicate nouns, 51.
Prepositions, 263–265; in composition with verbs, 91; with acc. or abl., or both, 263; when repeated, 265; order, 295.
Present, historical, 154; sequence with, 170.
Present passive participle, how represented, 244.
Price, abl. of, 119.
Primary tenses (see Principal Tenses).
Principal tenses, 168.
priusquam, 209–210.
Prohibition, 175.
Pronominal adverbs, 21.
Pronouns, syntax, etc., 11–45; demonstratives, 15–24; indefinites, 36–45; personal, 11–14; possessives, 33–35; reflexives, 25–27; representing English nouns, 303–304; order, 293.
Proper nouns, not repeated often in Latin, 304.
Provided that (proviso), 219.
Proviso, 219.
Purpose, clauses of, 188–189; containing a comparative, 189; expressed by **ad** and a gerundive, 257; expressed by supine, 261; purpose or end, dat. of, 99.

Quality, gen. of, 65–68; abl. of, 117–118; gen. and abl. of, compared, 65 N.
quam, with superlative, 8; in comparisons, 104; omitted with expressions of number or measure, 105.
quam diu = *as long as*, 206.
quamquam, 218.
quamvis, 218.
quasi, 217.
Questions, 280–283; direct, 281; direct, double or disjunctive, 282; emphatic, 281 N.; indirect, 220; of *doubt, indignation*, etc., 177; rhetorical, 178; sentence, 280 (b); word, 280 (a).
qui, preceded by **is**, 22–23; with **idem**, 32; in result clauses, 196; in purpose clauses, 188.
quia, 185.
quidam, 36, 40; **quidam ex** instead of partitive gen., 71.
quilibet, 36.
quin with verbs of *hindering*, 200; with verbs of *doubting*, 201.
quis (indefinite), 36–38.
quispiam, 36.
quisquam, 36, 39.
quisque, 36, 41–44; distinguished from **uterque**, 41 N.; follows **suus**, 42; with a superlative, 44.
quivis, 36.
quo, in purpose clauses, 189.
quoad = *as long as*, 206; = *until*, 207–208.
quod (causal), 185.
quominus, with verbs of *hindering*, 194.
quoniam, 185.

Reciprocals, 28, 45.
recordor, constr. with, 77.
refert = *it concerns*, 83 N.
Reflexive pronouns, 25–27; direct, 25–26; indirect, 27; with **ipse**, 29; with **quisque**, 42.
Reflexive sense of passive voice, 151.
Relative clauses, in general, 180; stating *definite facts*, 181; characteristic, 182–184; of cause, 187; of concession, 218; of purpose, 188; of result, 196; = English adjectives in *-ble* 305.

Relatives, order of, 293 (a).
Remembering, verbs of, constr. with, 75–76.
Reminding, verbs of, constr. with, 78.
res, use of, 299 N.
Result, clauses of, 196.
Rhythm, 289.
rus, constr., 138.

se, 26–27.
Secondary tenses (see Historical Tenses).
Sentences, interrogative, 280–283.
Separation, abl. of, 101.
Sequence of tenses, 168–171.
simul = *as soon as*, 203.
simul atque (ac) = *as soon as*, 203.
Specification, abl. of, 106.
Style, remarks on, 298–310.
Subject clauses with **ut** or **ne**, 191; with **ut** or **ut non**, 198; of the infin., 235.
Subjunctive, deliberative, 177; hortatory, 174; of polite or modest assertion, 179 (a); "potential," 179; in prohibitions, 175 N.; in wishes (optative), 176; after **volo, velim**, etc., 239; of characteristic, 182, 184; in causal clauses, 185–187; in purpose clauses, 188–189; in result clauses, 196; in object clauses, 190, 197; in subject clauses, 191, 198; in appositive clauses, 192, 199; in temporal clauses, 203–204, 208, 210; in conditions, 214–215; in conditional clauses of comparison, 217; in concessive clauses, 218; in clauses of proviso, 219; tenses of, in ind. disc., 225; by attraction, 232; future time in, 172.
Substantive use of adjectives, 3–4; of participles, 249; stylistic remarks on substantives, 298–304.
sui with gerundive, 254
Superlative, of adjectives, 7–10; strengthened, 7–9; with **quam**, 8: denoting a part, 10; with **quisque**, 44.
Supine, syntax of, 261–262; in **-um**, 261; in **-u**, 262.
suus, 35.

talis, use of **is** like, 23.
tametsi = *although*, 218.
tamquam, 217.
tamquam si, 217.
Temporal clauses, 203–210; with **dum**, etc., 206–208; with **antequam** and **priusquam**, 209–210; of a definite time in the past, 205; of present or future time, 205; contemporaneous with main clause, 204; preceding time of main clause, 203.
Temporal expressions seemingly locative, 130.
Tenses, 153–172; table of uses, 153; future and future perf., 153, 161; future, how expressed in subjunctive, 172; historical, defined, 168; imperfect, 153, 157–160; imperfect, in descriptive passages, 160; imperfect, of attempted action (conative), 158; imperfect, of customary past action, 157; imperfect, with **iam**, etc., 159; of infin., 240; of infin. in ind. disc., 224, 226; of subjunctive in ind. disc., 225; perfect, 153, 162–163; perfect, historical, 153, 162; perfect, definite, 153; perfect, indefinite, 153; perfect of verbs of inceptive meaning, 163; periphrastic, 165–166; present, 153–156; present, historical, 154; present, not used for future in Latin, 155; present, with **iam**, etc., 156; pluperfect, 153, 164; principal, defined, 168; sequence of, 168–171; compound tenses of verbs of *saying*, etc., 228; tenses in letters, 167.
That, 221 footnote.
Time, constructions of, 128–134; *how long*, 128; *when* or *within what period*, 128; how reckoned by Romans, 132–134; clauses of, expressed by attributive participle, 246.
Towards, with words of time, 131.
Towns, in constructions of place, 138–139.

ubi, in clauses of purpose, 188; of result, 196; of time, 203.

ullus, 39.
Until, 207–208.
usus est, 114 N.
ut, in clauses of result, 196; of purpose, 188; =*as*, *when*, in temporal clauses, 203; with **idem**, 32; with verbs of *fearing*, 195; with **volo**, 239; in object clauses, 190; in subject clauses, 191; in appositional clauses, 192.
ut primum=*as soon as*, 203.
ut si, 217.
utor, etc., constr. with, 115.
utrum . . . an, in double questions, 282, 220 N.

Value, indefinite, gen. of, 84.
vel, with superlative, 9; as a conjunction, 271.
velim, constr. with, 239.
velut, 217.
velut si, 217.
Verbs, in general, 145–262; agreement with subject, 145–149; with two acc., list, 54–55; with gen., list, 75–83; with dat., list, 87, 91; with abl., list, 101–102, 112, 115, 143; with infin. as object, list, 193; taking infin. as object, list, 236; taking infin. and subject acc. as object, list, 238; taking infinitive as subject, 235; impersonal, taking infin. and subject acc. as subject, list, 237; taking object clauses, list, 190, 197; order of, 285–286, 291; of *promising*, *hoping*, etc., with ind. disc., 227; of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., personal in passive, 228.
videor, 228 N.
Vocative, 52.
Voice, 150–152.
volo, constr. with, 193, 238–239.

Want, verbs of, with abl., 112.
Watches, Roman reckoning by, 134.
Wishes, 176; in ind. disc., 222.

Year, how expressed in Latin, 132.
Yes, 283 and Note.

INDEX OF ENGLISH WORDS AND PHRASES

References are to sections of the Notes on Idiom. Words enclosed in parentheses are merely illustrative; any other words in the same construction might be substituted for them.

About to (go), 165.
Accuse of (treason), 82.
Accustomed, am accustomed, 163; was accustomed to (get), 157; to (duty), 110.
Acquit of, 82.
After (five years), 131; (he had), 203; (learning these things), 125.
Afterwards, not long afterwards, 131.
Age, (twenty years) old, 128.
Ago, (ten years) ago, 129.
All men, 3; (good men, the best men), 44; of (these men), 72; things, 4.
Alone of all, 71.
Also, 31.
Although (I see), 218; 125, 246.
Am going (to-morrow), 155.
And, 266–269; he left his horse and hastened, etc., 310; cf. 296.
Any one, 36–39.
Appoint, 54.
As (a youth), 48, 49; as (expensive) as, 84; as (great, greatly) as possible, 8, 154; as follows, 16; as = since, 186, 187; as if (they had), 217; as long as, 206; as soon as (he could), 203.
Ashamed of, 80.
Ask about, 57; (you) for (a book), 55; (aid) from, 56; (them) to go, 190; what (you are reading), 168; why (he came), 171; whether (I wish), 220.
At home, (Rome), 138; the (Roman) games, 130; the same time, 31.
Attempt to (hold), 158.
Aware, 74.
Battle of (Marathon), 63, 130.
Because (they believed), 185; of (anger), 123, 124.
Before (they reached), 209; (they should recover), 210; (five years) before, 131; two days before, 133; before the eyes of, 97.
Begin to be (hurled), 152.
Being (the case), 186.
Believe, 87; am believed, 89, 228.
Born of (an influential family), 102.
Both . . . and, 272.
Bring under (Roman) rule, 69.
By (chance, design), 122, (led on) by (hope), 123; (learning), 259; (a sword, a soldier), 108; far (the noblest), 7; land and sea, 144.

Call, 54.
Can, if I can, 161; can it be that, etc.? 281 N.
Care a straw, 84; care for, have a bridge built (i. e., care for its building), 258.
Cease to be (hurled), 152.
Commissioner for (repairing), 255
Conceal, 55.
Concerns (the public welfare, me), 83 and N., 167.
Condemn to death, 82.
Consider (it praiseworthy), 99 N.
Consult (some one), 90; for (some one), 87, 90.
Contented with, 111.
Convict of (inconstancy), 82.

Dates, 132, 133.
Dear me, 58.
Depart for (Cilicia), 167.
Desirous of, 74.
Disgusted with, 80.
Distant, (700 paces) distant, 136.
Do not (think), 175, 179 b.
Doubt, not doubt that (he will), 201; what (he will), 172.

Each one, 41–44; other, 28, 45.
Eager for, 74.
Either . . . or, 272.
Elect (him consul), 54.
Enjoy, 115, 260 N.
Enough (defence), 70.
Equidistant from, 136.
Every (five years), 43; (good man), 44; body, 3; thing, 4.
Exist, there did exist, 291 b.

Fear that, that not, 195.
Feet, twenty feet wide, 65, 66, 135.
Fellow, 18; your fellows, 234.
Few of, 71.
Following, 16.
For, eager for, 74; love for (you), 34, 60, 61; for (a definite day), 131; (6000 sesterces), 119; (no large sum), more, less, 120; these reasons, 124; (transporting an army), 257; for the sake of (plundering), 252–254.
Forget (Epicurus), 75; (the affront), 76.
Forgetful, 74.
Former, 15.
From, descended from, 102; prevent from, 101, 194, 200; refrain from, 101, 287 (a); from (Italy), 137; (Rome), 138, cf. 140; each side, 217; the founding of the city, 247.
Full of, 74, 287 (b).

Grateful, feel grateful to, 87.

Happen that, 198.
Hate, 163.
Have, I have (a friendship), 94.
Hesitate, not hesitate to, 202.
Hinder from (crossing), 101, 194; not hinder from, 200.
Hope to (be present), 227.
However, 31, 270.

If I can, may, 161; (you succeed), 211–213; (you should succeed), 214; (you were succeeding or had succeeded), 215, 216; if only (it may be), 219.
Ignorant, 74.
Important for (preserving), 83.
In, abound in, in need of, 112; expert in, sharing in, 74; in (reputation), 106; (order, silence), 122; (the reading), 251, 259; the battle of (Marathon), 130; the (consulship) of, 126; (Italy), 137, 141; (Rome), 138, 140, 141; an (unfavorable) place, the whole (camp), 144.
Inexperienced, 74.
Interest of, 83.
Is he here? isn't he here? 281.

Know, = be acquainted with, 163; that (he gives), 221, 224; not know but, p. 47, footnote 1; know thou, 234; known, = famous, 20.

Lament, 81.
Latin, teach you Latin, 55.
Latter, 15.
Less (hesitation), 70.
Let (him come), 174.
Like, 74, 92, 93.

Make (the camp safe), 54, footnote, (the departure seem), 197.
May (ask), 179; (he come), 176; (whoever he) may (be), 181; if I may, 161.
Midst of, 10.
Might (say), 173; have (done), 241.
More (brave) than (prudent), 6.
Much (danger), 10, 70; (nobler), 7, 116.
Must (run), 166, 260.

Name, (his) name (was Marcus), 50; = a verb, 54.

Near (Rome), 139.
Neither . . . nor, 272.
No, 283.
Not only . . . but also, 272.
Now for a long time, 156, 159.

O'clock, (he came at nine) o'clock, 128, 134.
Of, be full of, be in need of, 112–114; be of the same state, 69; become master of, 115; desirous of, full of, 74; midst of, top of, 10; worthy of, 111; all of, 72; only one of, some of, 71; that of, 24; battle of (Marathon), 63, 130; (Cato) of (Rome), 64; city of (Rome), 62; (man) of (discretion, great discretion), 65, cf. 67 and 68; (march) of (three days), 65; (trench) of (twenty feet), 65, cf. 66; (great extent), 117; one's own accord, 30; (silver), 103; because of, 123, 124.
On, put on board, 143; on land and sea, the (right, left), 144.
One another, 28, 45; one . . . the other, another, 45; one in (ten), 43.
Only (case), which, 184.
Or not, 220 N., 282.
Order (him), 87, 88; to (throw), 193, 238 (with infinitive); 190, 154, 170 (with subjunctive).
Ought, 235, 169; to be (loved), 166, 260; to have (done), 241.

Pardon, 87, 97.
Perform (a task), 115, 260 N.
Permit, 190, 193, 238; it is permitted to (remain), 235, 193.
Person, in person, 30.
Persuade, 87; am persuaded, 89; to (set out), 190.
Pity, 79, 80.
Please, 87, 88.
Possession, gain possession of, 115, 260 N.
Possible, as (great, greatly) as possible, 8, cf. 154.
Preceding, 16.
Present (in person), 30; (times), 15.
Present (soldiers) with, (booty) to, 86.
Prevent from (crossing), 194; not prevent from, 200.
Promise to (come), 227.
Provided (it could be), 219.
Punishment, inflict punishment on, 201.
Put on board, 143.

Rain (stones), 110.
Rather too (talkative), 5.
Reason for, no reason for, 182.
Recollect, 75–77.
Refuse, etc., 194; not refuse, etc., 200.
Regard, out of regard for, 97.
Relying on, 111.
Remember, 163, 234; (the living), 75; (that fact), 76; remembering, = an adjective, 74.
Remind of, 78.
Repent of, 80.
Represent (him saying), 248.
River (Rhine), 62.
Ruling, 74.

Sacrifice (victims), 110.
Same, at the same time, 31; same as, 32.
Say that (he is giving), 221, 224; (he gives what they ask), 171, 225; (he gave what they asked), 171, 226; say that if, etc., 229, 230; is said (to have), 171, 228.
Seems (to me), 228.
Self, 25–27, 29; I enjoy myself, 151.
Sharing in, 74.
Should (like), 179; (not venture to say), 291; (I invite you?), 178; (be avoided), 260.
Show himself (brave), 54.
Shut the door, 170.
Since (it is night), 185–187.
Skilled in, 74.
So (foolish) as to, 196; so large (a crowd), 149; so much (danger), 70; so much the (more), 116.
Some one, 36–38; some who, 182; something, 36–38, 70.
Source, be a source of (glory) to, 99, 100.

Such, 23.
Suitable for, 92 and N.; (disembarking), 256; suitable to (be sent), 184.

Tell to (send), 222.
Than, 104, 105; more (brave) than (prudent), 6.
Thank, 87.
That (conspiracy) of yours, 17, 18; of his, 18, 19; that of Crassus, 24; that notorious eagle, 20; say that (he is), 221; that (he could, = result), 196–199; that (he might, = purpose), 188–192; that the (more easily), 189.
The (prudent Volusenus), 68; the well-known (Romulus), 20.
Themselves, of preserving themselves, 254.
There are (some) who, 182; there is (running), 150.
Think that (he gives), 221, 224.
Thousand, 73.
Through the agency of, 109.
Tired of, 80.
To, belong to (the same state), 69; grant to (them), 85; be (an honor) to (him), 99, 100; go to (Caesar), 137; (Delos), 138, cf. 140; (Italy), 137; to the vicinity of (Rome), 139.
Together, come together in one place, 142.
Too (severe), 5.
Towards (Rome), 139; (evening, winter), 131.
Try to (hold), 158.

Until (they drove), 207; (he should come), 208.
Use (horses), 115, 260 N.

Value, of (great, small) value, 84.
Very, 9, 30.

War, (Punic) war, 63, 130.
Warn of, 78; warn to, 190.
What, tell what he has done, 220; what am I (to do?), 177.
When (he had), 203; (he was), 204; (he has had), 205.
While (he was), 204, 242, 246.
Whoever he may be, 181.
Wish, I should like (you to go), 179 a, 239.
Wish to (forget), 193, 236, 238, 239.
With, contented with, 111; filled with, 112, 113; (fight) with (spirit). 121, with (all the cavalry), 107.
Worthy of, 111; to (obtain), 184.
Would be fair, 173; would have (said), 179; would that (he were here). 176.

Yes or no, 283.
You and I, 14, 147.

THE END.

LATIN GRAMMARS

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor Emeritus in Brown University

Complete Latin Grammar, $1.25	Short Latin Grammar . . $0.80

THESE text-books represent the latest advances in philological science, and embody the results of the author's large experience in teaching, and of his own linguistic studies, together with the suggestions and advice of eminent German specialists in the field of historical and comparative grammar.

¶ Throughout each volume the instruction has been adapted to present methods and present needs. A special effort has been made to develop the practical side of grammar, to make it as helpful as possible to the teacher in explaining the force of involved constructions in Latin authors, and to the learner in understanding and appreciating the thought in a complicated Latin sentence.

¶ The COMPLETE LATIN GRAMMAR is designed to meet the needs of Latin students in both schools and colleges. Simplicity and clearness of presentation, as well as of language, form leading characteristics of the work. Attention is directed particularly to the arrangement of material, and to the treatment of etymology, syntax, moods and tenses, subjunctive, indirect discourse, and hidden quantity.

¶ The SHORT LATIN GRAMMAR is intended for those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual, or for those who do not contemplate a collegiate course. In its preparation the convenience and interest of the student have been carefully consulted. The paradigms, rules, and discussions have in general been introduced in the exact form and language of the Complete Latin Grammar, by which it may at any time be supplemented. The numbering of the sections in the two books is also alike.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

By HENRY C. PEARSON, Horace Mann School, Teachers College, New York. Author of Latin Prose Composition, Greek Prose Composition

$0.90

THIS book is designed to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's Gallic War. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that may be taken up or omitted, according to the desire of the teacher.

¶ The vocabularies have been carefully selected, and contain, with very few exceptions, only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's Gallic War. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons. There is a constant comparison of English and Latin usage, but not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

¶ The topics, such as nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs, are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to one topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony. The work is provided with ample reviews; the regular exercises review the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and these are supplemented by review exercises. The last twenty pages are devoted to carefully graded material for reading, composed of selections from Viri Romae and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's Gallic War, Book II., in simplified form.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

EPISODES FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC AND CIVIL WARS

Edited by MAURICE W. MATHER, Ph.D., formerly Instructor in Latin, Harvard University

$1.25

THIS volume presents interesting and important parts of both the Gallic and Civil Wars, and for this reason differs from all other editions of Caesar. The selections from the Gallic War are equivalent in amount to the first four books, and include the account of the Helvetian War in the first book, the conflict with the Nervii in the second, the entire third and fourth books, the description of Britain and the Britons in the fifth book, the comparison of the Gauls and the Germans in the sixth, the failure at Gergovia and the grand success at Alesia in the seventh. From the Civil War about two-thirds as much is taken, including Curio's disastrous African campaign in the second book, and the struggle between Caesar and Pompey, ending with the latter's overthrow and death, in the third book.

¶ The notes on the first and second books of the Gallic War are adapted to the needs of classes which begin their study of Caesar with either book. Long vowels are marked, and summaries and frequent topical headings supply the thread of the narrative. The introduction contains the lives of Caesar and Pompey, a brief description of Caesar's army, and a list of books useful in the study of Caesar.

¶ An innovation which will meet with general approval is the printing in full in the vocabulary of the principal parts of verbs and of the genitive of nouns, except in the first conjugation of verbs, and in such nouns of the first, second, and fourth declensions as offer no possibility of mistake. Derivations are adequately explained. The book is abundantly supplied with illustrations, maps, and plans.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

VIRGIL'S AENEID

Edited by HENRY S. FRIEZE, late Professor of Latin, University of Michigan. Revised by WALTER H. DENNISON, Professor of Latin, University of Michigan

First Six Books . . . . $1.30 Complete $1.50
Complete Text Edition . . $0.50

IN its present form this well-known work has been thoroughly revised and modernized. It is published in two volumes: one containing the first six books, the other the entire twelve books—an arrangement especially convenient for students who read more than the minimum College Entrance Requirements in Latin. Both volumes are printed on very thin opaque paper, thus making each an extraordinarily compact and usable book.

¶ The introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

¶ The text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

¶ The notes have been thoroughly revised, and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected, and new ones added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are given with sufficient explanations.

¶ The vocabulary has been made as simple as possible, and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The illustrations and maps, for the most part, are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care, with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A NEW CICERO

Edited by ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor Emeritus in Brown University; assisted by J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Professor in Phillips Exeter Academy; and G. H. WILLIAMS, Professor in Kalamazoo College, late Instructor in Phillips Exeter Academy

Nine Oration Edition . . $1.25	Six Oration Edition . . $1.00

FOR convenience this edition of Cicero has been published in two forms. The larger edition includes the four orations against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. The smaller edition contains the first six of these orations, which are those required by the College Entrance Examination Board, and by the New York State Education Department.

¶ Before the text of each oration is a special introduction, which is intended to awaken the interest of the student by furnishing him with information in regard to the oration.

¶ The general introduction presents an outline of the life of Cicero, a brief history of Roman oratory, a chronological table of contemporaneous Roman history, a short account of the main divisions of the Roman people, the powers and the duties of magistrates, of the senate, of the popular assemblies, and of the courts of justice.

¶ The notes give the student the key to all really difficult passages, and at the same time furnish him with such collateral information upon Roman manners and customs, upon Roman history and life, as will enable him to understand, appreciate, and enjoy these masterpieces of Roman oratory. The grammatical references are to all the standard Latin grammars.

¶ The vocabulary gives the primary meanings of words, with such other meanings as the student will need in translating the orations. Special attention is devoted to the important subject of etymology. There are many maps and illustrations.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A TERM OF OVID

$0.75

Edited by CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M. (Harvard), of the Volkmann School, Boston

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Greek Primer	$1.00
Greek Prose Composition for Schools	.80
Story of Cyrus	.75
Xenophon's Cyropaedia	1.25

THE ten stories from the Metamorphoses included in this book are: Atalanta's Last Race; Pyramus and Thisbe; Apollo's Unrequited Love for Daphne; How Phaëton Drove his Father's Chariot; The Death of Orpheus; The Touch of Gold; Philemon and Baucis; The Impiety and Punishment of Niobe; The Flood; Perseus and Andromeda.

¶ There is a distinct advantage in using these selections from Ovid as a stepping-stone from Caesar to Virgil. Written in an entertaining manner, they not only make the student acquainted with the legends of the gods and heroes, but also lessen the greatest gap in a continuous Latin course by familiarizing him with the vocabulary of Virgil in easier verse. In the present volume are all but 300 of the words found in the first book of the Aeneid.

¶ The work contains about 1,420 lines of text, with full notes on the text and on scansion, and a vocabulary. The first hundred lines are divided into feet for scansion, with the accents and caesuras marked. The first three stories are accompanied by a parallel version in the order of ordinary Latin prose, with the quantities indicated. There are also synonyms of words not usual in prose, and of common words in extraordinary uses.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

LATIN DICTIONARIES

HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon. Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D.
Royal Octavo, 2030 pages. Sheep, $6.50; Full Russia, $10.00

¶ The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.
Large Octavo, 1200 pages. Cloth, $4.50; Half Leather, $5.00

¶ This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.
Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather $2.00

¶ This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.
Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep $4.00

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF HIGH SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXTBOOKS

Published Complete and in Sections

WE issue a Catalogue of High School and College Textbooks, which we have tried to make as valuable and as useful to teachers as possible. In this catalogue are set forth briefly and clearly the scope and leading characteristics of each of our best textbooks. In most cases there are also given testimonials from well-known teachers, which have been selected quite as much for their descriptive qualities as for their value as commendations.

¶ For the convenience of teachers this Catalogue is also published in separate sections treating of the various branches of study. These pamphlets are entitled: English, Mathematics, History and Political Science, Science, Modern Foreign Languages, Ancient Languages, Commercial Subjects, and Philosophy and Education. A single pamphlet is devoted to the Newest Books in all subjects.

¶ Teachers seeking the newest and best books for their classes are invited to send for our Complete High School and College Catalogue, or for such sections as may be of greatest interest.

¶ Copies of our price lists, or of special circulars, in which these books are described at greater length than the space limitations of the catalogue permit, will be mailed to any address on request.

¶ All correspondence should be addressed to the nearest of the following offices of the company: New York, Cincinnati, Chicago, Boston, Atlanta, San Francisco.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

90219

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY

A 000 729 654 4